SEAT

TOLEDO

Owner's manual

Foreword

This Instruction Manual and its corresponding supplements should be read carefully to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

Besides the regular care and maintenance of the vehicle, its correct handling will help preserve its value.

For safety reasons, always note the information concerning accessories, modifications and part replacements.

If selling the vehicle, give all of the on-board documentation to the new owner, as it should be kept with the vehicle.

Table of Contents

Manual structure 5

Content 6

Safety First 7

Safe driving 7
- Brief introduction 7
- Sitting position for vehicle occupants 10
- Pedal area 17
- Storing objects 17

Seat belts 20
- Brief introduction 20
- Why wear seat belts? 22
- Seat belts 26
- Seat belt tensioners 30

Airbag system 31
- Brief introduction 31
- Front airbags 35
- Side airbags* 38
- Curtain airbags 41
- Deactivating airbags 43

Child safety 45
- Brief introduction 45
- Child seats 47
- Securing child seats 50

Operating instructions 53

Controls and displays 53
- Overview 52
- Instruments and warning lamps 55
- Multi-function display* (on board computer) 59
- MAXI DOT* (Informative display) 62
- Control lamps 65

Communication 74
- Steering wheel controls 74
- Multimedia 80

Opening and closing 81
- Keys 81
- Central locking system 83
- Remote control 86
- Anti-theft alarm system 88
- Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system 89
- Rear lid 89
- Opening and closing electric windows 92

Lights and visibility 94
- Lights 94
- Interior lights 99
- Visibility 101
- Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers 103
- Rear vision mirrors 106

Seats and storage 107
- Front seats 107
- Head restraints 109
- Rear seats 110
- Luggage compartment 112
- Roof carrier* 116
- Drink holder 117
- Cigarette lighter, 12V power socket 118
- Storage compartment 120
- Coat hooks* 124

Heating and air conditioning 125
- Heating and air conditioning 125
- Air vents 126
- Heating 127
- Air conditioning (manual)* 129
- Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning) 132

Driving 136
- Starting and stopping the engine 136
- Brakes and brake servo systems 139
- Manual gearbox 142
- Automatic gearbox 143
- Foot pedals 148
- Parking aid* 148
- Cruise control 149
- START-STOP* 151

Practical Tips 153

Driving and the environment 153
- The first 1500 km (900 miles) 153
- Catalytic converter 154
- Economical and ecological driving 154
- Environmental compatibility 158
- Driving abroad 158
- Preventing damage to the vehicle 159
- Driving through water 159

Driving the vehicle with a trailer 161
- Driving the vehicle with a trailer 161

Care of the vehicle and cleaning 164
- Care of the vehicle 164

Checking and refilling levels 171
Fuel 171
Engine compartment 173
Engine oil 176
Coolant 179
Brake fluid 181
Windscreen washer 182
Battery 182
Wheels and tyres 187
Wheels 187
Accessories, modifications and spare parts . 195
General notes 195
Modifications and effects of the airbag system . 196
Self-help 197
First-aid kit and warning triangle 197
Fire extinguisher 197
Vehicle tool kit* 198
Changing a wheel 198
Tyre repair kit* 202
Jump-starting 205
Towing the vehicle 207
Fuses and bulbs 210
Fuses 210
Changing bulbs 214
Changing front fog light bulbs 219
Changing bulbs for rear lights (in side panel) .. 220
Changing rear lights (in rear lid) 223
Changing bulb for the number plate light 225

Technical specifications 226

Description of the data 226
Important information 226
Information on fuel consumption 228
Towing a trailer 229
Wheels 229
Technical Data 231
Checking fluid levels 231
Petrol engine 1.2 55 kW (75 PS) 232
Petrol engine 1.2 TSI 63 kW (85 PS) 233
Petrol engine 1.2 77 kW (105 PS) with/without Start-Stop 234
Petrol engine 1.4 90 kW (122 PS) Automatic ... 235
Diesel engine 1.6 CR 77 kW (105 PS) with/without Start-Stop 236
Dimensions and capacities 237

Index 239

Manual structure

What you should know before reading this manual

This manual contains a description of the **equipment** supplied with the vehicle at the time of press. Some of the equipment hereunder described will not be available until a later date, or is only available in certain markets.

Because this is a general manual for the TOLEDO, some of the equipment and functions that are described in this manual are not included in all types or variants of the model; they may vary or be modified depending on the technical requirements and on the market; this is in no way deceptive advertising.

The **illustrations** are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle in some details.

The **direction indications** (left, right, front, rear) appearing in this manual refer to the normal forward working direction of the vehicle except when otherwise indicated.

The equipment marked with an asterisk** is fitted as standard only in certain versions, and is only supplied as optional extras for some versions, or are only offered in certain countries.

® All registered marks are indicated with ®. Although the copyright symbol does not appear, it is a copyrighted mark.

▶ The section is continued on the following page.

■ Marks the **end of a section**.

WARNING

Texts preceded by this symbol contain information on safety. They warn you about possible dangers of accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts preceded by this symbol contain relevant information concerning environmental protection.

Note

Texts preceded by this symbol contain additional information. ■

Content

This manual is structured to provide the information you need in an organised way. The content of this Manual is divided into **sections** which belong to **chapters** (e.g. “Air conditioning”). The entire manual is divided into five large parts which are:

1. Safety First

Information about the vehicle equipment relating to passive safety such as seat belts, airbags, seats, etc.

2. Operating instructions

Information about the distribution of controls in the driver position of your vehicle, about the seat adjustment possibilities, about how to create a suitable climate in the vehicle interior, etc.

3. Practical Tips

Advice relating to the driving, caring and maintenance of your vehicle and certain problems you can solve yourself.

4. Technical specifications

Figures, values and the dimensions of your vehicle.

5. Alphabetic index

At the end of this manual there is a detailed alphabetical index, this will help you to quickly find the information you require. ■

Safety First

Safe driving

Brief introduction

Dear SEAT Driver

Safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and consider for both your own safety and for your passengers' safety.

WARNING

- **This manual contains important information about the operation of the vehicle, both for the driver and the passengers. The other sections of the on-board documentation also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.**

Safety equipment

The safety equipment is a part of the occupant protection system and can reduce the risk of injury in the event of accident.

Never put your safety or the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the risk of injury. The following list includes most of the safety equipment in your SEAT:

- Three-point seat belts
- Belt tension limiters for the front and rear side seats
- Belt tensioners for the front seats
- Belt height adjustment for the front seats
- Front airbags
- Side airbags in the front seat backrests
- Side airbags in the rear seat backrests*
- Curtain airbags
- Active front head restraints*
- ISOFIX anchor points for child seats in the rear side seats with the ISOFIX system
- Height-adjustable front head restraints
- Head restraints with in-use position and non-use position
- Adjustable steering column

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of an accident. However, these safety systems can only be effective if you and your passengers are sitting in a correct position and use this equipment properly.

Therefore, information is provided about why this equipment is so important, how it protects you, what you have to consider when using it and how you and your passengers can achieve the greatest possible benefit from the safety equipment fitted. This manual includes important warnings that you and your passengers should note in order to reduce the risk of injury.

Safety is everyone's business! ■

Before starting every trip

The driver is always responsible for the safety of the passengers and the safe operation of the vehicle.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

– Make sure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals are working properly.

– Check tyre pressure.

– Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.

– Make sure all luggage is secured ⇒ page 17.

– Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.

– Adjust front seat, head restraint and rear vision mirrors properly according to your size.

– Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the head restraints in the in-use position ⇒ page 15

– Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.

– Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ⇒ page 45.

– Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position. ⇒ page 10.

– Fasten your seat belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly. ⇒ page 20. ■

What affects driving safety?

Driving safety is largely determined by your driving style and the personal behaviour of all vehicle occupants.

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected by any circumstance, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ⇒ ⚠, for this reason:

– Always pay attention to traffic and do not get distracted by passengers or telephone calls.

– Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs). ▶

- Observe traffic laws and speed limits.
- Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.
- When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.
- If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

WARNING

When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases.

Sitting position for vehicle occupants

Introduction

WARNING

- The front seats, head restraints and seat belts must always be adjusted to the size of the vehicle occupant to provide you and your passengers with the greatest possible protection.
- Ensure your correct sitting position before setting off, and do not change this during the journey. Also advise your passengers to ensure their correct sitting positions not to be changed.
- A vehicle occupant sitting in an incorrect position is at risk of serious injury in the event that an airbag is activated.
- If the passengers in the rear seats are not sitting in an upright position, they are more likely to be injured due to the incorrect position of the seat belts.
- It is important that the driver keeps at a minimum of 25 cm from the steering wheel. It is important that the passenger keeps at a minimum of 25 cm from the dash panel. The airbag system will not be able to give the required protection if the minimum distance is not observed. This can cause a risk of fatal injury!
- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside part at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel or along its interior edge). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.
- The backrests must not be reclined too far back while driving. This could limit the effect of the seat belts and the airbag system. Risk of injury!

WARNING (Continued)

- Objects must not be placed in the footwell, as they could move to the area of the pedals in the event of a braking manoeuvre or change of direction. This would prevent the clutch, brake or accelerator from being pressed.
- Always keep your feet on the footwell when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, on the window or on the seat! An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position!

Correct sitting position for driver

The correct sitting position for the driver is important for safe and relaxed driving.

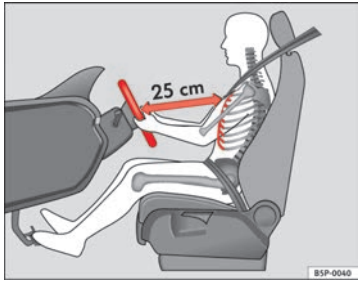

Fig. 1 The correct distance between driver and steering wheel

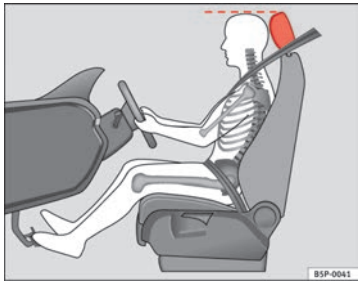

Fig. 2 Correct head restraint position for driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the driver:

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the centre of your chest ⇒ Fig. 1.

– Move the driver seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled ⇒ ⚠.

– Ensure that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ Fig. 2.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ⇒ page 20.

– Keep both feet in the footwell so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

Adjustment of the driver seat ⇒ page 108. ▶

WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the driver can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between the centre of the chest and the centre of the steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 1. If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury when the driver airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing his or her seat belt correctly. The further the seat backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve optimal protection.** ■

Correct sitting position for front passenger

The front passenger must sit at least 25 cm away from the dash panel so that the airbag can provide the greatest possible protection in the event that it is triggered.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the front passenger:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible ⇒ ⚠.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ page 14.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ⇒ page 20.

It is possible to deactivate the front passenger airbag in **exceptional circumstances** ⇒ page 27.

Adjusting the front passenger seat ⇒ page 108. ▶

WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the front passenger can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your chest and the dash panel. If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, out the window or on the seat. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger in events such as sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never travel with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the front passenger is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the seat backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**

Correct sitting position for passengers in the rear seats

Passengers in the rear seats must sit up straight, keep their feet in the footwells, have the head restraints positioned for use and wear their seat belts properly.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, passengers on the rear seat bench must consider the following:

– Adjust the head restraint to the correct position. ⇒ page 15

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ⇒ page 20.

– Use an appropriate child restraint system when you take children in the vehicle ⇒ page 45.

WARNING

- **If the passengers in the rear seats are not sitting properly, they could sustain severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**
- **Seat belts can only provide optimal protection when seat backrests are in an upright position and the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly. If passengers In the rear seats are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt increases.**

Correct adjustment of front seat head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

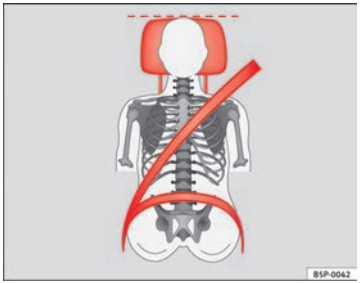

Fig. 3 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the front

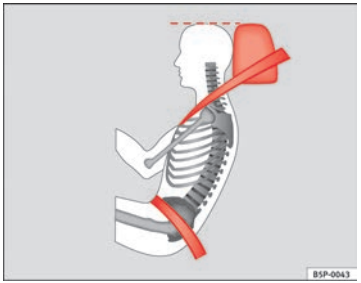

Fig. 4 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side

Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and, at the very least, at eye level. ⇒ Fig. 3 and ⇒ Fig. 4.

Adjusting the head restraints ⇒ page 109

WARNING

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints could result in death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the height of the passenger.**

Active head restraints*

Vehicle occupants are pressed into their seats during a rear end collision. The resulting body pressure on the seat backrest activates the active head restraint* on the front seat, which moves rapidly forwards and upwards at the same time. This movement reduces the distance between the occupant's head and the head restraint, thus reducing the risk of head injuries such as brain trauma.

WARNING

Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.

- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints could result in death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the height of the passenger.**

Note

The active head restraints* could also be triggered if a vehicle occupant applies a high level of pressure to the seat backrest (e.g. by “falling” back into the seat when entering the vehicle) or if pressure is applied to a front seat head restraint from the rear. This accidental activation is, however, not dangerous, as the active head restraints will return to the original position immediately and are thus once again ready. ■

Correct adjustment of rear seat head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of the passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations

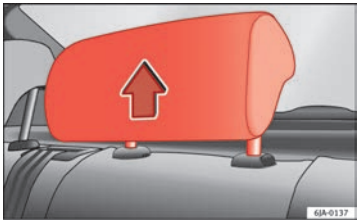

Fig. 5 Head restraints in correct position

Rear outer seat head restraints

– The rear outer seat head restraints have 4 positions.

– Three positions for **use** ⇒ Fig. 5 . In these positions, the head restraints are used normally, protecting passengers along with the rear seat belts.

– And one position for **non-use**.

– To fit the head restraints in position for use, pull on the edges with both hands in the direction of the arrow.

Centre rear head restraint

– The centre head restraint only has two positions, **in-use** (head restraint up) and **non-use** (head restraint down). ▶

WARNING

- **Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the head restraints are in the non-use position.**
- **Do not swap the centre rear head restraint with either of the outer seat rear head restraints.**
- **Risk of injury in case of an accident!**

CAUTION

Note the instructions on the adjustment of the head restraints ⇒ page 109.

Examples of incorrect sitting positions

An incorrect sitting position can lead to severe injuries to occupants.

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only when the belt webs are properly positioned. Incorrect sitting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect seat belt position. As the driver, you are responsible for all passengers, especially children.

– Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ⇒ ⚠.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all occupants. The list is not complete, but we would like to make you aware of this issue.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your seat backrest far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the surface of a seat.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the footwell.
- Never travel without wearing the seat belt.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **Any incorrect sitting position increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position exposes the occupants to severe injuries if airbags are triggered, by striking a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. Before every trip, instruct your passengers to sit properly and to stay in this position during the trip ⇒ page 10, Sitting position for vehicle occupants.**

Pedal area

Pedals

The operation of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

– Ensure that you can always press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals unimpaired to the floor.

– Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.

Use only floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened on the footwell.

If a brake circuit fails, the brake pedal must be pressed down thoroughly in order to stop the vehicle.

Wearing suitable shoes

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feeling for the pedals.

WARNING

- **Restricting pedal operation can lead to critical situations while driving.**
- **Never place objects on the driver footwell. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation. In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to operate the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal. Risk of accident!**

Floor mats on the driver side

Only floor mats may be used which can be securely fastened in the footwell and do not impair operation of the pedals.

– Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ⇒ ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a specialised dealership. Fasteners* for floor mats are fitted in the footwells.

WARNING

- **If the pedals are obstructed, an accident may occur. Risk of serious injuries.**
- **Ensure that the floor mats are always securely attached.**
- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.**

Storing objects

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other loose objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment.

Unsecured objects which shift back and forth could impair the driving safety or driving characteristics of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Place heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Place the heavy objects first.

– Secure heavy objects to the fastening rings ⇒ page 18.

WARNING

- **Loose luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment could cause serious injuries.**
- **Always stow objects in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings.**
- **Use suitable straps to secure heavy objects.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects can be thrown forward, injuring vehicle occupants or passers-by. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag. If this happens, objects can be transformed into “missiles”. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle's handling and lead to an accident. Therefore, it is essential to adjust your speed and driving style accordingly, to avoid accidents.**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle weights or allowed maximum weight. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially when the rear lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment, closing the door behind them; they will be trapped and run the risk of death.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Close and lock all the doors and rear lid when you leave the vehicle. Before you lock the vehicle, make sure that there are no adults or children in the vehicle.**
- **Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. All vehicle occupants must have their seat belt fastened ⇒ page 20.**

Note

- Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slits in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Ensure that the ventilation slits are never covered.
- Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings are commercially available. ■

Fastening rings*

There can be four fastening rings in the luggage compartment for fastening luggage and other objects.

– Always use suitable and undamaged straps to secure luggage and other objects to the fastening rings ⇒ ⚠ in Loading the luggage compartment on page 18.

– Pull up the fastening rings to attach the straps.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can build up so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

Example: An object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (31 mph), this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective ▶

weight of the object increases to about 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this object strikes an occupant as it flies through the interior of the vehicle. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag.

WARNING

- **If pieces of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged retaining cords, injuries could be sustained in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.**
- **To prevent pieces of luggage or other objects from flying forward, always use appropriate retaining cords which are secured to the fastening rings.**
- **Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.**

Seat belts

Brief introduction

Before driving: remember your seat belt!

Wearing a seat belt properly can save your life!

In this section you will learn the importance of wearing seat belts, how they work and how to properly fasten, adjust and wear them.

– Read and consider all the information as well as the warnings in this chapter.

WARNING

- **If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases.**
- **Properly worn seat belts can reduce severe injuries in case of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents. For safety reasons, you and all other vehicle occupants must always wear the seat belts properly while the vehicle is moving.**
- **Pregnant women or people with physical disabilities must also use seat belts. Like all other vehicle occupants, these people can also sustain severe injuries if they are not wearing their seat belts properly.**

Number of seats

Your vehicle has **five** seats, two in the front and three in the rear. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

In some versions, your vehicle is approved **only** for four seats. Two front seats and two rear seats.

WARNING

- **Never transport more that the permitted amount of people in your vehicle.**
- **Every vehicle occupant must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system.**

Seat belt warning lamp*

The control lamp acts as a reminder to the driver to fasten the seat belt.

Before starting the vehicle:

– Fasten your seat belt securely.

– Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.

– Protect children by using a child seat according to the child's height and weight.

After the ignition has been switched on, the control lamp on the instrument panel lights up[1] if the driver has not fastened his/her seat belt, and an audible warning is heard if the vehicle is driven at more than 30 km/h (19 mph).

The warning lamp* is switched off if the driver seat belt is fastened while the ignition is switched on.

[1] Depending on the model version

Why wear seat belts?

Physical principles of frontal collisions

In the event of a frontal collision, a large amount of kinetic energy must be absorbed.

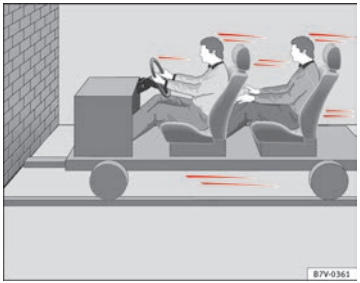

Fig. 6 Vehicle about to hit a wall: the occupants are not wearing seat belts

Fig. 7 The vehicle hits the wall: the occupants are not wearing seat belts

It is easy to explain how the laws of physics work in the case of a head-on collision: When a vehicle starts moving ⇒ Fig. 6, a certain amount of energy known as kinetic energy is produced in the vehicle and its occupants.

The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and its passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be released in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h (16 mph) to 50 km/h (31 mph), for example, the kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, all of the passengers' kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact ⇒ Fig. 7.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) to 50 km/h (31 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher. ▶

Vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a head-on collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but to all accidents and collisions. ■

The danger of not using the seat belt

The general belief that the passengers can protect themselves with their hands in a minor collision is false.

Fig. 8 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently

Fig. 9 The unbelted passenger in the rear seat is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver wearing a seat belt

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted vehicle occupants are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ⇒ Fig. 8.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts. When triggered, airbags provide only additional protection. All occupants (including the driver) must wear seat belts properly at all times during the trip. This will reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat or not.

Note that airbags can be triggered only once. To achieve the best possible protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly so that you will be protected in accidents in which no airbag is deployed.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently in an accident. Passengers in the rear seats who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ⇒ Fig. 9. ■

Seat belt protection

Passengers not wearing seat belts risk severe injuries in the event of an accident.

Fig. 10 A driver wearing the seat belt properly is secured by the belt in sharp braking

Properly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and substantially reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. In addition, properly worn seat belts reduce the danger of being thrown from the vehicle.

Vehicle occupants wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. The front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the releasing kinetic energy and consequently, the risk of injury.

Our examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts substantially reduce the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown that wearing seat belts is an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some frontal accidents. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, overturns or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off! ■

Safety instructions on using seat belts

If seat belts are used correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always wear the seat belt as described in this section.

– Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged. ▶

WARNING

- If the seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.
- Fasten your seat belt before every trip - even when driving in town. The other vehicle occupants must also wear the seat belts at all times, otherwise they run the risk of being injured.
- The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.
- Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of your seat as long as the vehicle is in motion.
- Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.
- The seat belt must never be twisted while it is being worn.
- The seat belt should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
- Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belts, reducing their capacity to protect.
- The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.
- Never use seat belt clips, fastening rings or similar instruments to alter the position of the belt webbing.

WARNING (Continued)

- Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a specialised workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.
- The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly ⇒ page 170.

Seat belts

Seat belt adjustment

The seat belts for the front and rear occupants are locked into position by a latch.

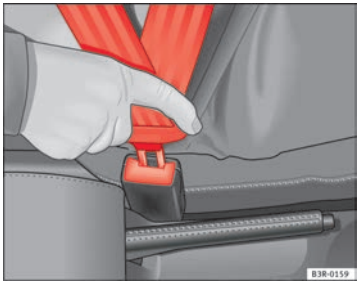

Fig. 11 Belt buckle and latch plate of seat belt

The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.

– Adjust the seat and head restraint correctly.

– To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ Fig. 11.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic retractor on the shoulder strap. Full freedom of movement is permitted when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly. However, during sudden braking, during travel in steep areas or bends and during acceleration, the automatic retractor on the shoulder belt is locked.

The automatic belt retractors on the front seats are fitted with seat belt tensioners ⇒ page 30.

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **Never put the latch plate in the buckle of another seat. If you do this, the seat belt will not protect you properly and the risk of injury is increased.**
- **If a vehicle occupant is incorrectly belted in, the seat belt cannot protect him or her properly. An incorrectly positioned seat belt can cause extremely severe injuries.**
- **Always engage the retractor lock when you are securing a child seat in group 0, 0+ or 1 ⇒ page 45.**

Seat belt position

Seat belts offer their maximum protection only when they are properly positioned.

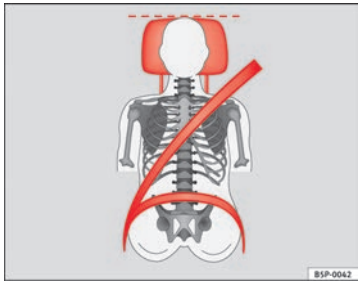

Fig. 12 Correct seat belt and head restraint positions, viewed from front

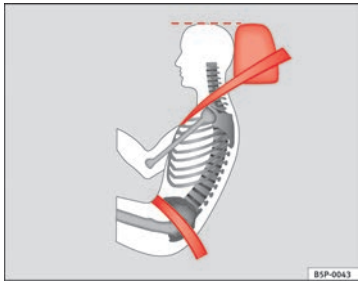

Fig. 13 Correct seat belt and head restraint positions, viewed from side

The following features are available to adjust the seat belt in the shoulder region:

- belt height adjustment for the front seats.
- front seat height adjustment*.

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the torso ⇒ Fig. 12.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis ⇒ Fig. 13. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 24.**

Pregnant women must also fasten their seat belts properly

The best protection for the unborn child is for the mother to wear the seat belt properly at all times during the pregnancy.

Fig. 14 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the seat belt is properly positioned ⇒ page 27.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ page 10.

– Holding the latch plate, pull the belt evenly across your chest and as low as possible over the pelvis ⇒ Fig. 14.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the corresponding seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ ⚠.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach, and always lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 24.**

Seat belt release

The seat belt must not be unfastened until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

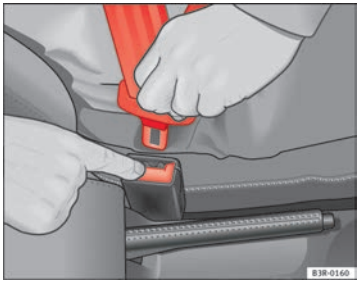

Fig. 15 Remove latch plate from buckle

– Press the red button on the belt buckle ⇒ Fig. 15. The latch plate is released and springs out ⇒ ⚠.

– Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim is not damaged.

WARNING

Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. If you do, you increase the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries.

Adjusting the seat belt height

Seat belt height adjusters can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt at the shoulder.

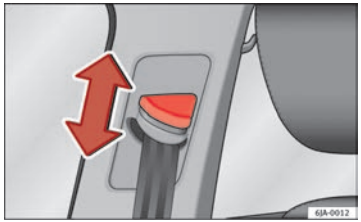

Fig. 16 Location of the belt height adjuster

The seat belt adjuster for the front seats can be used to adjust the proper belt position at the shoulder.

– Press the upper part of the shoulder belt guide and hold it in this position ⇒ Fig. 16.

– Move the shoulder belt guide up or down until you have adjusted the seat belt ⇒ page 27.

– After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely.

Incorrectly fastened seat belts

Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause severe or even mortal injuries.

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if the belt web is properly worn. The seat belts must be fastened exactly in the order described in this chapter. An incorrect sitting position impairs substantially the protection a seat belt offers and can lead to severe or fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. As the driver, you are responsible for yourself and all passengers, especially children. Therefore:

– Never allow anyone to wear the seat belt incorrectly while the vehicle is moving ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Before every trip, instruct your passengers to adjust their seat belts properly and to wear them for the whole journey.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of seat belts ⇒ page 24.**

Seat belt tensioners

Function of the seat belt tensioner

During a frontal collision, the seat belts on the front seats are retracted automatically.

The seat belts for the occupants in the front seats are equipped with belt tensioners. Sensors will only trigger the belt tensioners during severe head-on, lateral and rear collisions, and only if the seat belt is actually being worn. This retracts and tightens the seat belts, reducing the forward motion of the occupants.

The seat belt tensioner can be triggered only once.

The seat belt tensioners will not be triggered in the event of a light frontal, side or rear collision, if the vehicle overturns or in situations where no large forces act on the front, side or rear of the vehicle.

Note

- If the seat belt tensioners are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Specialised workshops are familiar with these regulations, which are also available to you.

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

The belt tensioners are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tensioners or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tensioners function incorrectly or not at all.

So that the effectiveness of the seat belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations, which are known to the specialised workshops, must be observed.

WARNING

- **Improper use or repairs not carried out by qualified mechanics increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. The belt tensioners may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tensioners or seat belts.**
- **The seat belt tensioner, seat belt and automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tensioners and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a specialised workshop only.**
- **The belt tensioners will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed if they have been activated.**

Airbag system

Brief introduction

Why wear a seat belt and assume the correct sitting position?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, please ensure the following before driving:

– Always wear the seat belt properly ⇒ page 20.

– Adjust the driver seat and the steering wheel correctly ⇒ page 11.

– Adjust the front passenger seat correctly ⇒ page 12.

– Adjust the head restraint correctly ⇒ page 14.

– Use the correct child restraint system to protect children in your vehicle ⇒ page 45.

The airbag is deployed at high speed in fractions of a second. If you have an incorrect seating position at the time the airbag is deployed, it could cause you critical injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all vehicle occupants assume a correct sitting position while travelling.

A sharp braking before an accident may cause a passenger not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries on the occupant. This also applies to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors that will trigger an airbag are: the type of accident, the angle of collision and the speed of the vehicle.

Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbag will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle involved in an accident, no matter how serious, is not a determining factor for the airbags to have been triggered.

WARNING

- **Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries.**
- **All vehicle occupants, including children, who are not properly belted can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt, if you lean forward or to the side while travelling or assume an incorrect sitting position, there is a substantially increased risk of injury. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly ⇒ page 20.**
- **Always adjust the front seats properly.**

The danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat

Rear-facing child seats must never be used on the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is enabled.

The front passenger front airbag is a serious risk for a child if it is activated. The front passenger seat is life threatening to a child if he/she is transported in a rear-facing child seat. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating airbag can strike it with such force that it can cause critical or fatal injuries.

Therefore we strongly recommend you to transport children on the rear seats. That is the safest place for children in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ⇒ page 43. When transporting children, use a child seat appropriate to the age and size of each child ⇒ page 45.

For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to disable the airbag, a Technical Service must be consulted.

WARNING

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **Never secure a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is enabled. The child can suffer critical or fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is triggered.**
- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and hurl it with great force against the door, the roof or the seat backrest.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to disable the airbag, a Technical Service must be consulted.**
- **If, under special circumstances, it is necessary to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential that you observe the following safety measures:**
  - **Deactivate the front passenger airbag ⇒ page 43.**
  - **The child seat must be approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front or side airbag.**
  - **Follow the installation instructions given by the child seat manufacturer and observe the safety instructions ⇒ page 45, Child safety.**
  - **Before properly installing the child seat, push the front passenger seat completely backwards so that the greatest possible distance to the front passenger airbag is ensured.**
  - **Ensure that no objects prevent the front passenger seat from being pushed completely back.**
  - **The backrest of the front passenger seat must be in an upright position.**

Warning lamp for airbag and seat belt tensioner

This control lamp monitors the airbag and seat belt tensioner system.

The control lamp monitors all airbags and seat belt tensioners in the vehicle, including control units and wiring connections.

Monitoring of airbag and belt tensioner system

Both the airbag and belt tensioner systems operation is constantly monitored electronically. Each time the ignition is switched on, the control lamp lights for several seconds and the instrument panel display* shows **AIRBAG/TENSIONER**.

The system must be checked when the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on
- after the ignition is switched on, does not turn off after 4 seconds
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on
- lights up or flashes while the vehicle is moving

In the event of a malfunction, the warning lamp remains on continuously. In addition, depending on the malfunction, a fault message appears in the instrument panel display for approx. 10 seconds and a short audible warning is given. In this event, you should have a specialised workshop check the system immediately.

If any of the airbags are disabled by a Technical Service, the warning lamp lights for several seconds more after the verification and will turn off if there is no fault.

WARNING

- **If there is a malfunction, the airbag and belt tensioner system cannot properly perform its protective function.**
- **If a malfunction occurred, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the airbag system and belt tensioners may not be triggered, or may not be triggered correctly.**

Repairs, maintenance and disposal of airbags

The parts of the airbag system are installed in various places in your vehicle. If work is carried out on the airbag system or parts have to be removed and fitted on the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. In the event of an accident this could cause the airbag to inflate incorrectly or not inflate at all.

The relevant safety requirements must always be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag are **scrapped**. Specialised workshops and vehicle disposal centres are familiar with these requirements.

WARNING

- **If repairs are not carried out by a professional, or if the airbags are used incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries is increased. The airbags may fail to inflate, or could inflate in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the surface of the airbag unit on the passenger side of the dash panel, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way.**
- **It is important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **To clean the steering wheel or dash panel, you may use only a dry or a water-moistened cloth. Never clean the dash panel and the airbag module surface with cleaners containing solvents. Solvents cause the surface to become porous. If the airbag triggered, plastic parts could become detached and cause injuries.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the airbag system.**
- **Any work on the airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the steering wheel) should be performed only by a specialised workshop. Specialised workshops have the necessary tools, repair information and qualified personnel.**
- **We strongly recommend you to go to a specialised workshop for all work on the airbag system.**
- **Never attempt to alter the front bumper or the body.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**

For the sake of the environment

The airbags, which are a special type of waste, must be disposed of through an Authorised Service, because they contain pyrotechnic elements.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

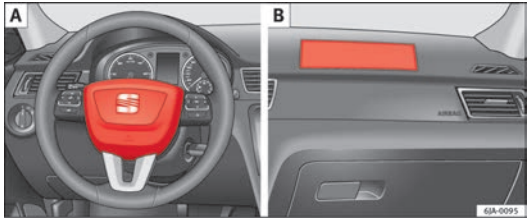

Fig. 17 Driver airbag in the steering wheel and front passenger airbag in the dash panel

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 17 A and the front passenger airbag is located in the dash panel ⇒ Fig. 17 B. Airbags are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision ⇒ page 37, Safety notes on the front airbag system.

In addition to their normal function of restraining the occupants, the seat belts also hold the driver and front passenger in a position where the airbags can provide maximum protection in a frontal collision.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 20, Brief introduction.

The main parts of the front airbag system are:

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit)
- the two front airbags (airbag with gas generator) for the driver and front passenger
- a control lamp on the dash panel ⇒ page 33

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag control lamp will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

There is a fault in the system if the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ page 33
- after the ignition is switched on, does not turn off after 4 seconds
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on
- lights up or flashes while the vehicle is moving

The front airbag system will not be triggered if:

- the ignition is switched off
- there is a minor frontal collision
- there is a side collision
- there is a rear-end collision
- the vehicle turns over ▶

WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 10, Sitting position for vehicle occupants.**
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, during a frontal collision the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.**

Operation of front airbags

Inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury.

Fig. 18 Inflated front airbags

The airbag system is designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger are triggered in a severe frontal collision.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbags fill with a propellant gas and deploy in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ Fig. 18. The fully deployed airbags cushion the forward movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. After the collision, the airbag deflates sufficiently to allow visibility.

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

Airbag covers when the frontal airbags are triggered

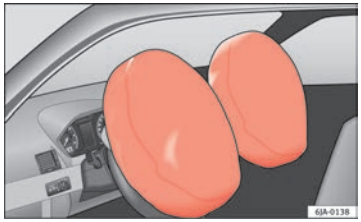

Fig. 19 Airbag covers reacting when the front airbags are triggered

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel or dash panel when the driver and front passenger airbags are triggered ⇒ Fig. 19. The airbag covers remain connected to the steering wheel or the dash panel.

Safety notes on the front airbag system

If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.

WARNING

- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel and dash panel. If the minimum distance is not observed then the airbags do not correctly protect the vehicle occupants; risk of fatal injuries! In addition, the front seats and head restraints must always be positioned correctly for the height of the occupant.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt, if you lean forward or to the side while travelling or assume an incorrect sitting position, there is a substantially increased risk of injury. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Never let a child travel on the front seat without an appropriate restraint system. If the airbag is triggered in an accident, children can sustain serious or fatal injuries from the airbag as it inflates ⇒ page 45.**
- **The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passenger, pets and objects.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**

Side airbags*

Description of side airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

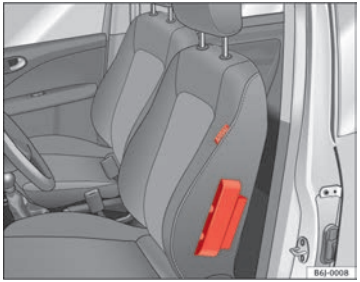

Fig. 20 Side airbag in driver seat

The side airbags are located in the backrest cushions of the driver seat ⇒ Fig. 20 and the front passenger seat as well as in the rear seats. The locations are identified by the text “AIRBAG” in the upper region of the backrests.

Together with the seat belts, the side airbag system gives the front seat occupants additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 40, Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system.

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers on the front seats to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold the passengers on the front seats and the outer rear seats in a position where the side airbags can provide maximum protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 20, Brief introduction.

The side airbag system will not be triggered if:

- the ignition is switched off
- there is a minor side collision
- there is a frontal collision
- there is a rear-end collision
- the vehicle turns over

The main parts of the airbag system are:

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit)
- the side airbags in the sides of the backrests of the front and rear seats
- a control lamp on the dash panel ⇒ page 33

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag control lamp will light up for approx. 4 seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

WARNING

- **In a side-on collision the side airbags will not work if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the interior panels have been removed.**
- **Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Never drive the vehicle if the loudspeakers in the door panels have been removed, unless the holes left by the loudspeakers have been correctly closed.**
- **Always check that the openings are closed or covered if loudspeakers or other equipment are fitted in the interior door panels.**
- **Any work carried out to the doors should be made in an authorised workshop.**
- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 10, Sitting position for vehicle occupants.**
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, during a side collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.**

Operation of side airbags

Inflated airbags can reduce the risk of head or chest injury in many side impact collisions.

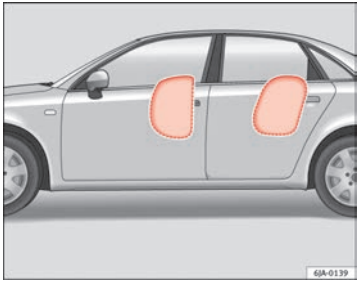

Fig. 21 Illustration of principle: completely inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle

In some **side collisions**, the side airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 21.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas.

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the occupants of the front seats and the outer rear seats and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag.

Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system

If airbags are used correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in side impact collisions.

WARNING

- **If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at a greater risk of injury if the side airbag system is triggered in an accident.**
- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.**
- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.**
- **Great forces, such as hard blows or kicks, must not be exerted upon the backrest bolster because the system may be damaged. In this case, the side airbags would not be triggered.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over seats with side airbags unless the covers have been approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness.**
- **Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **When children assume an incorrect sitting position, they expose themselves to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; this could have critical consequences including serious injury or death ⇒ page 45.**
- **Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**
- **The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a specialised workshop.**

Curtain airbags

Description of curtain airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

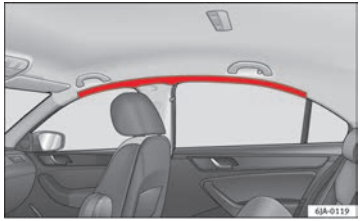

Fig. 22 Location of curtain airbags

The curtain airbags are located on both sides in the interior above the doors ⇒ Fig. 22 and are identified with the text “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the curtain airbag system gives the vehicle occupants additional protection for the head and upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 42, Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 20, Brief introduction.

The main parts of the curtain airbag system are:

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit)
- the curtain airbags (airbags with gas generator) for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the rear seats
- a control lamp on the dash panel ⇒ page 33

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically.

The curtain airbag system will not be triggered if:

- the ignition is switched off
- there is a frontal collision
- there is a rear-end collision
- the vehicle turns over
- there is a minor side collision

WARNING

If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.

Operation of curtain airbags

Fully inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury in a side collision.

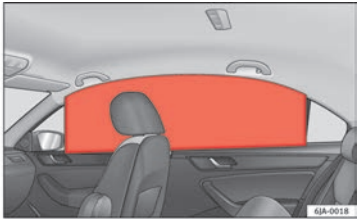

Fig. 23 Deployed curtain airbags

During some **side collisions** the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 23.

In certain types of accident the front, side and curtain airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas. In the process, the curtain airbag covers the side windows and door pillars.

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. ■

Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system

If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.

WARNING

- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **For safety reasons, the curtain airbag must be disabled in those vehicles fitted with a passenger compartment separation screen. See a Technical Service to make this adjustment.**
- **There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the outer seats and the deployment space of the curtain airbags so that the curtain airbag can deploy without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows.**
- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Please, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **Any work on the curtain airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.** ▶

WARNING (Continued)

- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**
- **The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a specialised workshop.**

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating airbags

The deactivation of airbags corresponds only to certain cases, i.e. if:

- a child seat is required in the front passenger seat with the child facing in the opposite direction to the direction of travel (in some countries, due to divergent legal requirements, facing in the direction of travel) ⇒ page 47;
- despite the driver seat being in the correct position, a minimum distance of 25 cm cannot be maintained between the centre of the steering wheel and the driver's torso.
- installation of special devices is required in the steering wheel area due to a physical disability.
- if you have special seats installed (e.g. an orthopaedic seat without side airbag).

The front passenger front airbag can be disabled using the switch ⇒ page 44.

We recommend that you contact an authorised SEAT dealer for the disabling of other airbags.

Airbag system control

The airbag system availability is controlled electronically, regardless of whether an airbag is disabled.

If an airbag was disabled using a diagnostics system:

- the airbag system warning lamp lights up after switching on the ignition for about 4 seconds, and then flashes for about 12 seconds

If the airbag has been disabled with the airbag switch on the side of the dash panel:

- the airbag control lamp will light up for about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
- the airbag is disabled, signalled with the warning lamp **OFF** which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** placed in the centre part of the dash panel ⇒ Fig. 24 ③.

Note

- Respect the current legislation in your country regarding the deactivation of airbags
- At your authorised SEAT dealer you can find information on which vehicle airbags can be deactivated.

Front passenger front airbag switch

Fig. 24 Front passenger front airbag switch/warning lamp for the disabling of the front passenger airbag

The switch disables only the front passenger front airbag.

Disabling the airbag

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the passenger side storage compartment.

– Turn the airbag switch slot with the key to the position ② ⇒ Fig. 24 **OFF**.

– Check, with the ignition switched on, that the control lamp lights up ③ **OFF** which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre part of the dash panel.

Switching on the airbag

– Switch the ignition off.

– Turn the airbag switch slot with the key to the position ① ⇒ Fig. 24 **ON**.

– Close the passenger side storage compartment.

– Check, with the ignition switched on, that the control lamp does not light up ③ **OFF** which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre part of the dash panel.

Control lamp with the word PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF (front passenger airbag disabled)

If the front passenger front airbag is **disabled**, after switching on the ignition, the control lamp will light up for several seconds, then it will switch off for about 1 s and then switch on again.

If the control lamp is flashing, there is a fault in the disabling of the airbag system ⇒ ⚠. **Please go immediately to an Official Service.**

WARNING

- **The driver of the vehicle is responsible for disabling or switching on the airbag.**
- **Always switch off the ignition before disabling the front passenger airbag! Failure to do so could result in a fault in the airbag deactivation system.**
- **If the control lamp OFF (airbag deactivated) flashes, the front passenger front airbag will not trigger in the event of an accident! Have the system immediately checked by an Official Service.**

Child safety

Brief introduction

Introduction

Statistics relating to accidents show that children are generally safer on the rear seat than on the front passenger seat.

For safety reasons we recommend that children under 12 years of age travel on the rear seats. Depending on their age, height and weight, children travelling on the rear seat must use a child seat or a seat belt. For safety reasons, the child seat should be installed in the centre of the rear seat or behind the front passenger seat.

The physical laws involved and the forces acting in a collision apply also to children ⇒ page 22.

But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce this risk, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the SEAT Original Accessories Programme, which includes systems for all ages made by "Peke"[1].

These systems have been especially designed and approved, complying with the ECE-R44 regulation.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and note ⇒ page 45.

We recommend you to always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation. ■

Safety notes on using child seats

Proper use of child seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for any children you transport in your vehicle.

– Protect your children by properly using the appropriate child seats ⇒ page 47.

– Always ensure that the seat belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child seat.

– When travelling, never allow children to distract you from traffic.

– Take breaks regularly during long trips. Take a break at least every two hours. ▶

[1] Not for all countries

WARNING

- Never install a child seat facing backwards on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger front airbag has been disabled. This could lead to a risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger front airbag must always be disabled ⇒ page 43. If the passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest position.
- For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to disable the airbag, the vehicle must be taken to a Technical Service.
- All vehicle occupants, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.
- Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!
- Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be thrown through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other vehicle occupants.
- If children assume an improper sitting position when the vehicle is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly important if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; as this could cause serious injury or even death.
- A suitable child seat can protect your child.
- Never leave an unsupervised child alone on a child seat or in the vehicle.
- Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child seat, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.
- Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause injuries even in a minor collision or in sudden braking manoeuvres.
- The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the seat belt is properly positioned ⇒ page 26, Seat belts.
- Only one child may occupy a child seat ⇒ page 47, Child seats.

Child seats

Categorisation of child seats into groups

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

Child seats are subject to the regulation ECE-R 44. ECE-R stands for: Regulations of the European Economic Commission

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

Group 0: children up to 10 kg

Group 0+: children up to 13 kg

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

Group 2: from 15 to 25 kg

Group 3: from 22 to 36 kg

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R44 standard bear the test mark on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it).

Group 0 and 0+ child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help you to protect your child.

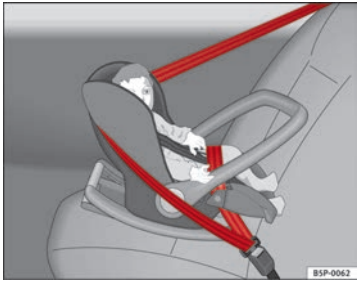

Fig. 25 A group 0 rear-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat

Group 0: For babies up to about 9 months old and 10 kg in weight, the most suitable seats are those appearing in the figure ⇒ Fig. 25.

Group 0+: For babies up to about 18 months old and 13 kg in weight the most suitable seats are those appearing in the illustration.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ page 45.

Group 1 child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help you to protect your child.

Fig. 26 A category 1 forward-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat

Child seats using the ISOFIX system or seats in which the child faces the rear of the vehicle are most appropriate for babies and small children weighing between 9 and 18 kg.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ page 45.

Group 2 and 3 child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help you to protect your child.

Fig. 27 Forward-facing child seat installed on rear seat

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

Group 2 child seats

Children *under* 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg are best protected by group 2 child seats together with properly adjusted seat belts.

Group 3 child seats

Children *over* 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg but less than 1.5 metres tall are best protected by seat cushions with head restraints together with properly worn seat belts ⇒ Fig. 27.

WARNING

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie approximately on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm. The seat belt must lie close to the upper part of the body. The lap belt part must lie across the pelvis, not across the stomach, and always fit closely. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack ⇒ page 26, Seat belts.
- Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ page 45.

Securing child seats

Ways to secure a child seat

A child seat can be secured differently on the rear seat and on the front passenger seat.

You can secure a child seat to the rear seat or front passenger seat in the following ways:

- Child seats in groups **0 to 3** can be secured with a seat belt.
- Child seats in groups **0, 0+ and 1** with the ISOFIX and Top Tether* systems can be secured without using the seatbelt, thanks to the ISOFIX and Top Tether* securing rings ⇒ page 51.

Category	Weight	Seat locations		
		Front passenger	Rear outer	Rear centre
Group 0	‹10 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 0+	‹13 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 1	9-18 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 2/3	15-36 kg	U*	U	U

U: Suitable for universal approved restraining systems for use in this age category (universal retention systems are those fitted using the adult seat belt).

*: Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible, as high as possible and always disable the airbag.

L: Suitable for retention systems using the ISOFIX and Top Tether* anchors.

WARNING

- **When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This could cause fatal injuries to the child! However, if, in exceptional cases, it is necessary to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag ⇒ page 43 must always be disabled and the seat adjusted to its highest position, where possible.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ page 45.**

Child seats fastened with the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* system

Child seats with the ISOFIX or Top Tether system can be secured quickly, easily and safely on the rear outer seats.*

Fig. 28 ISOFIX securing rings

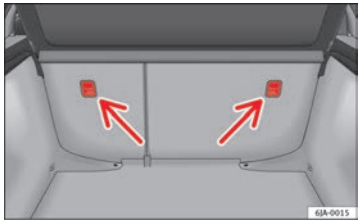

Fig. 29 Top Tether* securing ring

When removing or fitting the child seat, please be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions.

– Move the rear seat as far to the rear as it will go.

– Press the child seat onto the ISOFIX retaining rings until the child seat can be heard to engage securely. If the child seat is equipped with Toptether* anchor points, secure it to the correspondent ring. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

– Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure.

Two ISOFIX retaining rings are fitted on each rear seat. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and, in others, they are secured to the rear floor. The access to the ISOFIX rings is between the rear seat backrest and the seat cushioning. The Top Tether* anchors are located at the rear of the rear seat backrests (behind the seat or in the luggage compartment).

Child seats with the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* attachment system are available from the Technical Services.

WARNING

- **The securing rings are designed only for use with ISOFIX and Top Tether* child seats.**
- **Never secure child seats that do not have the ISOFIX and Top Tether* system, retaining belts or other objects to the securing rings – this could result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Ensure that the child seat is secured correctly using the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* securing rings.**

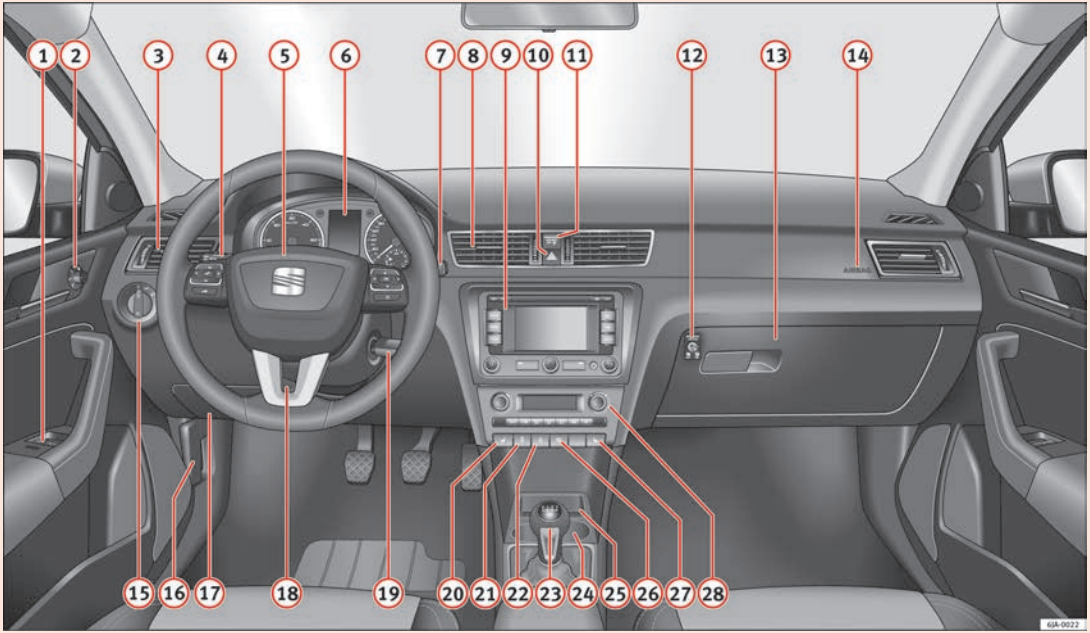

Fig. 30 Interior

Operating instructions

Controls and displays

Overview

1 Electric window controls 92
2 Control for adjusting electric exterior mirrors 106
3 Air outlets 126
4 Multifunction switch lever:
– turn signals, main beams, parking lights, headlight flasher 97
– cruise control 149
5 Steering wheel:
– with horn
– with the driver front airbag 35
– with controls for audio, navigation system and telephone . 74
6 General instrument panel: instruments and warning lamps .. 53
7 Multifunction switch lever:
– multifunction display 59
– Windscreen wiper and washer 103
8 Air outlets 126
9 Depending on the equipment:
– audio system
– navigation system
10 Hazard warning lights switch 98
11 Control lamp for front passenger airbag deactivated warning lamp 44
12 Front passenger airbag switch 44
13 Passenger side storage compartment 120
14 Front passenger airbag 35
15 Switch for the lights and the main lights range control 94, 96
16 Bonnet release lever 175
17 Fuse housing 211
18 Steering column adjustment lever 137
19 Ignition lock 138
20 Driver seat heating control 109
21 ASR switch 141
22 Central lock button 85
23 Depending on the equipment:
– gear lever (manual gearbox) 142
– selector lever (automatic gearbox) 144
24 Depending on the equipment:
– drink holder 117
– ashtray holder 118
25 glove compartment/storage compartment 120
26 Heated rear window control 101
27 Driver seat heating control 109
28 Depending on the equipment:
– heating controls 127
– air conditioning controls 129
– Climatronic controls ..... 132 ▶

Note

The location of the controls of right-hand drive cars differs slightly from the location shown here ⇒ Fig. 30. However, the symbols correspond to the respective controls. ■

Instruments and warning lamps

General instrument panel – summary

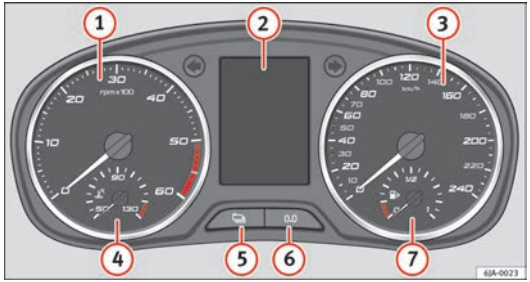

Fig. 31 General instrument panel

1. Rev counter ⇒ page 55
2. Digital display:
   - with trip counter ⇒ page 57
   - with service interval display ⇒ page 57
   - with digital clock ⇒ page 58
   - with multifunction display ⇒ page 59
   - with informative digital display ⇒ page 62
3. Speedometer ⇒ page 56
4. Coolant temperature indicator ⇒ page 56
5. Control for selecting the mode:
   - adjust hours/minutes
   - activate/deactivate according to speed in mph or km/h respectively
   - service intervals – show the days and kilometres (miles) remaining
6. Switch for:
   - delete trip counter
   - reset the service intervals
   - adjust hours/minutes
   - activate/deactivate the selected mode
7. Fuel reserve indicator ⇒ page 56

WARNING

- **Always keep your attention on driving! As the driver, you have the full responsibility for the safety of traffic.**
- **Never use the instrument panel controls when the vehicle is in motion. Do so only when the vehicle is stopped!**

Rev counter

The red part of the rev counter scale (1) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55 marks the zone where the engine control unit begins to limit the engine speed. The engine control unit is responsible for reducing the revs to a safe limit.

Before the needle reaches the red zone change up into a higher gear, or move the selector lever of the automatic gearbox to D.

In order to drive at an optimum RPM, respect the gear change indications ⇒ page 58.

For the sake of the environment

Changing to higher gears in advance helps to reduce fuel consumption and noise levels, helps to protect the environment and benefits both the useful life and the reliability of the engine.

Speedometer

Speed warning

An audible warning will be heard on exceeding 120 km/h (75 mph). If the speed falls below this limit, the audible warning switches off.

Note

This function is only valid for certain countries.

Coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge (4) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55 only works when the ignition is switched on.

Damage to the engine can be avoided by observing the indications regarding the temperature zones.

Engine cold

If the needle is still on the left of the scale, the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, hard acceleration and submitting the engine to high loads.

Operating temperature zone

When the needle has reached the central part of the scale, this means the engine has reached operating temperature. Running the engine at full throttle and the high temperatures involved can cause the needle to be positioned in the zone on the right.

CAUTION

The additional headlights and other parts placed in front of the fresh air inlets reduce the effect of engine cooling. With high outside temperatures and engine speeds a risk becomes present of the engine overheating ⇒ page 68, Coolant level and temperature.

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge (7) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55 operates only when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of approx. 55 litres. When the needle reaches the reserve area, the warning symbol ⇒ page 71 lights up on the general instrument panel and an audible warning can be heard.

CAUTION

Never completely empty the tank! An irregularity in the fuel supply system can cause irregularities when the engine is running. Unburned fuel can reach the exhaust gas system, which can cause deterioration of the catalytic converter.

Note

Some vehicles come fitted with the fuel gauge on the general instrument panel.

Trip counter*

Daily trip counter (trip)

The daily trip counter indicates the journey that has been covered since the last time the function was reset in 100 metre sections.

In order to reset the daily distance covered keep the button (6) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55 pressed down.

Odometer

The odometer indicates the total number of kilometres (or mileage) that the vehicle has covered until now.

Fault indication

In the event of a fault in the informative display the word **Error** will appear permanently. Please take the vehicle to a specialised Technical Service to solve this fault.

Note

In vehicles equipped with an informative display, if the indicator of the second speed in mph or in kph are activated respectively, this speed will be displayed in place of the odometer. ■

Service interval display*

Service interval display

Before reaching the service interval, when the ignition is switched on the key symbol appears on the screen for several seconds together with the indication of the number of kilometres (miles) remaining. The number of days remaining until the service inspection is indicated simultaneously.

The informative display indicates:

Service in ... km (miles) or... days.

The indication of kilometres (miles) or time remaining until the inspection reduces in intervals of 100km (miles) or 1 day.

If the service interval is reached, when the ignition is switched on the key symbol appears flashing on the screen together with the word **Service**.

The informative display indicates:

Service now!

Indication of number of kilometres (miles) or time remaining until the service inspection

The number of kilometres (miles) or time remaining until the service inspection can always be displayed when the ignition is switched on by pressing the button (5) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55.

The key symbol and indication of the number of kilometres (miles) remaining appear on the display for several seconds. The number of days remaining until the service inspection is indicated simultaneously.

In vehicles equipped with an informative display this information can be accessed from the menu, **Settings** ⇒ page 63.

Resetting service interval display

The service interval display can be reset only after a service message or prewarning has been displayed in the general instrument panel display.

It is advisable to visit a Technical Service to reset the display.

The specialised Technical Service:

- resets the display memory after performing the following inspection
- stores the information in the Maintenance Programme
- places a sticker on the side of the instrument panel in the driver area indicating the date of the next inspection

The service intervals display can be reset by pressing the button, (6) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55. ▶

In vehicles equipped with an informative display the service interval display can be reset from the menu, **Settings** ⇒ page 63.

CAUTION

We advise against resetting the service interval display yourself, given that this action could cause an imbalance in the service intervals, and as a result, faults in the vehicle.

Note

- Never reset the display between service intervals as this could lead to erroneous indications.
- After disconnecting the battery of the vehicle, the service interval display values remain stored.
- If the general instrument panel is changed after a repair, the correct values must be input in the service interval display. This operation is carried out by a specialised service.
- After resetting the display with flexible service intervals, the information will be indicated in the same way as vehicles with fixed service intervals. Therefore, we recommend that a SEAT Authorised Service resets the service interval display, who will do so correctly using diagnostics equipment.
- For more detailed information please consult the Maintenance Programme. ■

Digital clock

The clock is set using the buttons (5) to (6) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55.

Select the indication you want to change with button (5) and make the adjustment with button (6).

In vehicles equipped with an informative display this can be reset from the menu, **Time** ⇒ page 63. ■

Recommended gear display

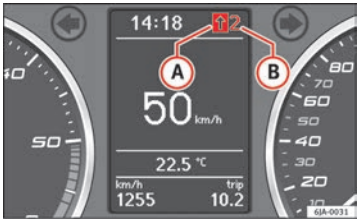

Fig. 32 Recommended gear display

The general instrument panel display indicates the engaged gear (A) ⇒ Fig. 32.

In order to optimally reduce the fuel consumption, the recommended gear is displayed on the screen.

If the control unit analysis decides that a gear change is required, an arrow appears on the display (A). This arrow can point up or down indicating whether a lower or higher gear is recommended.

Simultaneously, the gear currently engaged is indicated (B) in the place of the recommended gear.

CAUTION

However, the driver is always responsible for choosing the appropriate gear for each situation, (i.e. when overtaking). ■

Multi-function display* (on board computer)

Introduction

The multifunction display can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. When the ignition is switched on the last function selected before it was switched off is displayed.

The multifunction display data is shown on the screen ⇒ Fig. 33 ⇒ page 59.

In vehicles fitted with an informative display ⇒ page 62 the system can be adjusted so that certain data is not shown.

WARNING

- **Always keep your attention on driving! As the driver, you have the full responsibility for the safety of traffic.**
- **Do not rely only on the outside temperature indicator to verify whether the road surface is frozen. This is because with an outside temperature of +4 °C (+39 °F) ice can generate on the road - Warning of frozen road surface!**

Note

- Models for certain countries can show the values in imperial units.
- If the second speed in mph (km/h) is displayed, the current speed in km/h (mph) is not displayed on the screen.

Memory

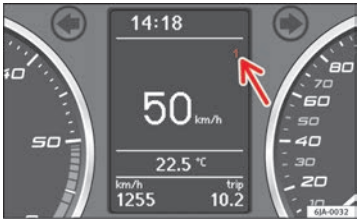

Fig. 33 Multifunction display

The multifunction display has two automatic memories. The selected memory is displayed on the screen ⇒ Fig. 33.

The current journey data (memory 1) is always displayed when the number **1** appears on the display. When number **2** appears on the display, the total distance travelled is shown (memory 2).

The memory is selected by pressing button (B) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60.

Current journey memory (memory 1)

The current journey memory collects data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is continued **within two hours** of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder memory. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for **more than two hours**.

Total distance travelled memory (memory 2)

The total distance travelled memory collects journey data from any number of individual journeys up to a maximum of 19 hours and 59 minutes and 1999 km (miles) or until 99 hours and 59 minutes and 9999 km (miles) in cars with an informative display. The memory will automatically be deleted if one of the named values is reached, resetting the data collected.

Unlike the current journey memory, this memory is not deleted, even when the ignition is switched off for more than two hours.

Note

After disconnecting the battery, all the values stored in the memories **1** and **2** are deleted.

Operation

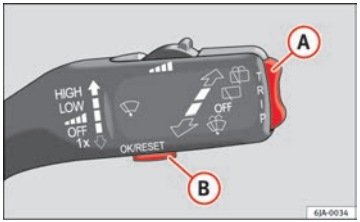

Fig. 34 Multifunction display: controls

The button to change the functions (A) ⇒ Fig. 34 and the button to delete the memory (B) are located on the window wiper lever.

Selecting a memory

– Briefly press the station button, (B) ⇒ Fig. 34.

Selecting functions

– Briefly press the rocker switch (A) ⇒ Fig. 34 up or down. This displays the multifunction display functions in consecutive order on the screen.

Resetting

– Select the required memory.

– Keep the button (B) ⇒ Fig. 34 pressed.

The following values of the selected memory are reset using the (B) button.

- the average fuel consumption
- journey distance covered
- average speed
- duration of the journey

Multifunction display data

Outside temperature

The display indicates the outside temperature.

At temperatures below +4 °C (+39 °F), the snowflake symbol is also displayed (frozen road surface warning symbol) and an audible warning is given. Pressing the rocker switch (A) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60 shows the last displayed function.

Journey duration

The display shows the time you have covered since the memory was last reset. If you wish to measure the duration of a journey from a specific moment, the memory must be deleted by pressing the button, (B) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60.

The maximum time indicated by the two memories is 19 hours 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes for vehicles fitted with an informative display. The memory is reset if this value is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption is indicated on the display in litres/100km (miles)[1]. You can adapt your driving style to the required consumption with the assistance of this indicator.

The consumption is displayed in litres per hour while the vehicle is stopped or at idling speed[2].

Average fuel consumption

The display shows the average fuel consumption in litres/100km (miles)[1] calculated since the memory was last reset ⇒ page 59.

If you wish to measure the average fuel consumption from a specific period, the memory must first be deleted by pressing the button, (B) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60. While driving the first 300 m after deleting the memory this value is not shown on the display.

The value is updated regularly while the vehicle is in motion.

Operating range

The approximate operating range is indicated in kilometres (miles) on the display. It shows how far the vehicle can travel with the available fuel using the same driving conditions as a reference.

The operating range is calculated in sections of 10 kilometres (miles). When the fuel gauge enters the reserve zone, the operating range is displayed in sections of 5 kilometres (miles).

The operating range is calculated based on the fuel consumption during the last 50 kilometres (miles). The operating range increases when driving in a more economical manner.

When the memory is reset (after disconnecting the battery), the operating range is calculated with a 10 litres per 100 km (miles) consumption and adjusts to represent the current driving style.

Distance

The display shows the distance you have covered since the memory was last reset ⇒ page 59. If you wish to measure the duration of a journey from a specific moment, the memory must be deleted by pressing the button, (B) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60.

The maximum value for both memories is 1999 km (miles), or 9999 km (miles) in vehicles fitted with an informative display. The memory is reset if this value is exceeded.

Average speed

The display shows the average speed in km/h (mph) calculated from the last time the memory was reset ⇒ page 59. If you wish to measure the average speed from a specific period, the memory must first be deleted by pressing the button, (B) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60.

While driving the first 300 m after deleting the memory this value is not shown on the display.

The value is updated regularly while the vehicle is in motion.

Driving speed

The current driving speed, the same as indicated on the speedometer, is shown on the display (3) ⇒ Fig. 31 ⇒ page 55.

Oil temperature

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C (+122 °F) or if a fault appears on the oil temperature control, in place of the temperature indication, the sign - -.- is shown. ■

1) The indication of consumption is given in kms (miles)/litres in models for certain countries.

2) The indication of the consumption when the vehicle is stationary is given in - -.- kms (miles)/litres. in models for certain countries.

Speed warning

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stopped

– Press the button, (A) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60 select **Speed warning**.

– Press the button, (B) to activate the possibility of adjusting the speed limit.

– Press the button, (A) to select the required speed limit, i.e. 50 km/h (31 mph).

– Press the button, (B) to confirm the selected speed or wait several seconds until the adjustment is automatically stored.

The speed limit can be adjusted in 5 km/h (mph) intervals.

Adjust the speed limit while driving

– Press the button, (A) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60 select **Speed warning**.

– Drive to the required speed, i.e. 50 km/h (31 mph).

– Press the button (B) to set the current driving speed as the speed limit.

If you want to change the speed limit, this will be regulated in 5 km/h (mph) intervals (i.e. the speed set at 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

– Press the button, (B) to confirm the selected speed or wait several seconds until the adjustment is automatically stored.

Changing or resetting the speed limit

– Press the button, (A) ⇒ Fig. 34 ⇒ page 60 select **Speed warning**.

– Press the button, (B) to reset the speed limit.

– Press the button, (B) again to activate the possibility of adjusting the speed limit.

If the indicated speed is exceeded at any time, an audible warning is given. The message **Speed warning** appears simultaneously on the display with the imputed speed limit.

The speed limit stays in the memory even after switching the ignition off and on.

MAXI DOT* (Informative display)

Introduction

The informative display informs about the **current operational status of your vehicle.** Additionally, the screen also displays the information for the radio, the multifunction display, the telephone, the navigation system, the devices connected to the MDI input and the automatic gearbox ⇒ page 143.

WARNING

Always keep your attention on driving! As the driver, you have the full responsibility for the safety of traffic.

Main menu

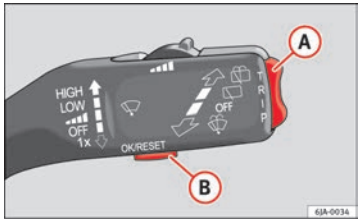

Fig. 35 Window wiper lever: informative display controls

– **Main menu** is activated by keeping the rocker switch (A) pressed down ⇒ Fig. 35.

– The menu items can be selected with the button, (A). Briefly press the button, (B) to display the selected information.

The following items can be selected:

- **MFD** ⇒ page 59
- **Audio** ⇒ Booklet audio system Instruction Manual
- **Navigation** ⇒ Booklet Navigation system Instruction Manual
- **Telephone** ⇒ Booklet Bluetooth system Instruction Manual
- **Vehicle status** ⇒ page 64
- **Settings** ⇒ page 63

The **Audio** and **Navigation** options are only displayed when these factory-fitted systems are switched on.

Note

- If the multifunction display is not operated during 10 seconds, the menu automatically returns to one of the superior levels. ■

Settings

You can make certain adjustments using the informative display. The current values are displayed directly in their respective places above or below the line.

The following items can be selected:

- **Language**
- **MFD data**
- **Time**
- **Winter tyres**
- **Units**
- **Second speed**
- **Inspec. Service**
- **Factory settings**
- **Back**

Select the option **Back** to return to the superior menu level.

Language

Here the language used to display the warning and information texts can be selected.

MFD data

Here certain data shown on the multifunction display can be switched on or off.

Time

In this menu you can set, the time, the display format (24 or 12 hours) and changes from winter to summer time.

Winter tyres

The speed at which an audible warning is given can be adjusted here. This function can be used with winter tyres, whose maximum permitted speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle. ▶

When exceeding the maximum speed the following is shown on the display:

Winter tyres max speed ... km/h ... (mph)

Units

The units of measure for temperature, consumption and journey distances can be set here.

Second speed

The second speed can be activated/deactivated in mph or km/h respectively here.

Inspection Service

Here you can choose to display the kilometres (miles) and days remaining until the next service, and reset the service interval display.

Factory settings

Select **Factory setting** to reset the values of the informative display to their factory settings. ■

Door, rear lid or bonnet open indicator

If at least one of the doors, rear lid or bonnet is open, a symbol is shown on the informative display indicating that the door, rear lid or bonnet concerned is **open**.

An audible warning is also given simultaneously if the vehicle is being driven at a speed of above 6 km/h (4 mph). ■

Auto-check system

Vehicle status

When the ignition is switched on, some vehicle functions such as the condition of its systems are automatically checked.

The warning messages about eventual faults in addition to other information is displayed on the informative display. This information is displayed together with their respective symbols on the informative display or by warning lamps that light up on the general instrument panel ⇒ page 65.

The option, **Vehicle status**, appears in the menu when at least one warning message is present. The first of the warnings given is displayed upon selecting this option. If there is more than one message present, this is displayed on the screen, i.e. **1/3**. This means that the warning currently displayed is the first of a total of three.

Warning symbols

	The engine oil pressure is too low	⇒ page 67
	Automatic gearbox overheated clutches	⇒ page 64
	Engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	⇒ page 67
	Engine oil pressure fault	⇒ page 65

Automatic gearbox overheated clutches

If the symbol appears on the informative display, the temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches has reached an unacceptable level.

The informative display indicates:

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Instruction Manual! ▶

Stop the vehicle in this case, stop the engine and wait until the symbol has switched off. Danger of damage to the gearbox! You can continue driving once the symbol is switched off.

Engine oil pressure fault !

If the symbol ! appears on the informative display, the vehicle must be immediately taken to a specialised service. Information regarding the maximum engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

WARNING

If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ page 98.

Note

- If a warning appears on the informative display it must be confirmed by pressing the button, (B) ⇒ Fig. 35 ⇒ page 63 before proceeding to the main menu.
- The symbols are displayed again until the fault is corrected. After the first time a symbol is displayed they reappear, but without a message for the driver.

Control lamps

Summary

The control lamps indicate certain functions or faults accompanied by an audible warning.

When the ignition is switched on some of the warning lamps light up for several seconds for the purpose of the control systems of the vehicle. These warning lamps must switch off several seconds after the ignition is switched on.

	Handbrake	⇒ page 66
	Brake system	⇒ page 66
	Fasten your seat belt	⇒ page 67
	Alternator	⇒ page 67
	Door open	⇒ page 67
	Engine oil (red or yellow colour)	⇒ page 67
	Coolant temperature/level (red or blue colour)	⇒ page 68
	Power steering	⇒ page 69
	Electronic stability control (ESC)	⇒ page 69
	Traction control system (ASR)	⇒ page 69
	Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	⇒ page 70
	Rear fog light	⇒ page 70
	Bulb fault	⇒ page 70
	Emission control system	⇒ page 70
	Glow plug system (diesel engines)	⇒ page 70

EPC	Engine electronics control (petrol engines)	⇒ page 71
	Particulate filter (diesel engines)	⇒ page 71
	Fuel reserve	⇒ page 71
	Airbag system	⇒ page 72
	Tyre pressure	⇒ page 72
	Liquid level in the window washer system	⇒ page 73
	Turn signals (left/right)	⇒ page 73
	Fog lights	⇒ page 73
	Cruise speed	⇒ page 73
	Selector lever lock	⇒ page 73
	Main beams	⇒ page 73

WARNING

- **Failure to observe control lamps and warning messages can result in serious personal injuries or damage to your vehicle.**
- **The engine compartment is a dangerous area! Carrying out work in the engine compartment, i.e. checking and filling service liquids, can lead to injury, scalding, burns and fires. Therefore the corresponding warnings must always be observed ⇒ page 173, Engine compartment.**

Handbrake Ⓟ

If the Ⓟ warning lamp lights up, the handbrake is applied. Additionally, driving the vehicle at speeds exceeding 6 km/h (4 mph) for at least 3 seconds produces an audible warning.

The informative display indicates:

Release the handbrake!

Brake system Ⓓ

The warning lamp Ⓓ lights up if the brake fluid level falls too low or if there is a fault in the ABS system.

The informative display indicates:

Brake fluid Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the level of the brake fluid ⇒ page 181

WARNING

- **If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ page 98.**
- **The following indications must be taken into account when opening the engine compartment to check the brake fluid ⇒ page 173, Engine compartment.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **If the warning lamp lights up together with the warning lamp ⇒ page 70, Anti-lock system (ABS) , , Stop the vehicle! Seek professional help.**
- **A fault in the brake system or in the Anti-lock brake system (ABS) can lead to longer braking distances – Risk of accident!**

Fastening seat belts

After switching on the ignition, the warning lamp lights up to instruct the driver or front passenger to fasten their seat belt. The warning lamp switched off when the driver or front passenger fastens their seat belt.

While driving at a speed in excess of 20 km/h (12 mph), and if the driver or front passenger does not have their seat belt fastened an audible warning is given and the control lamp lights up.

If the driver or front passenger does not fasten their seat belt during the following 90 seconds the audible warning switches off while the warning lamp will remain up.

Alternator

If the control lamp is lit up while the engine is running, the battery is not charging.

Seek professional help. Have the car's electrical equipment inspected.

WARNING

If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ page 98, Hazard warning light switch.

CAUTION

Additionally, if the warning lamp lights up while driving, the warning lamp also lights up (cooling system fault). Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine – Risk of engine damage!

Door open

If the control lamp, lights up, one of the doors, the rear lid or the bonnet is open.

WARNING

If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ page 98.

Engine oil

The control lamp flashes red (oil pressure low)

The informative display indicates:

Oil pressure. Switch off the engine! Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level ⇒ page 177

If the symbol flashes although the oil level is correct, **do not drive on**. Do not even run the engine at idle speed!

Seek professional help.

The control lamp lights up yellow (insufficient oil level)

The informative display indicates:

Check the oil level!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level ⇒ page 177

If the bonnet remains open for more than 30 seconds, the warning lamp switches off. If the engine oil is not refilled, the warning lamp lights up again after 100 km (62 miles).

The control lamp flashes yellow (oil level sensor faulty)

The informative display indicates:

Oil sensor. Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, The warning lamp flashes various times after the ignition is switched on and an audible warning is given.

Seek professional help.

WARNING

If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ page 98.

Coolant level and temperature

If the warning lamp (blue) is lit up, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature[1]. Avoid high engine speeds, hard acceleration and submitting the engine to high loads.

If the warning lamp (red) is lit up or flashing, the coolant temperature is too high or its level is too low.

The informative display indicates:

Check coolant! Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the coolant level ⇒ page 179 and refill if necessary ⇒ page 180.

If the coolant is situated in the prescribed area, the high temperature may be due to a fault in the cooling system fan. Check the radiator fan fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 214, Changing fuses in the engine compartment.

If the warning lamp (red) remains lit up, despite both the coolant level and the radiator fan fuse being in correct condition, **stop the vehicle!**

Seek professional help.

[1] This does not apply to vehicles equipped with an informative display.

WARNING

- **If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ page 98.**
- **Take care when opening the coolant reservoir. When the engine is warm or hot, the system is pressurised – Danger of burns! Wait for the engine to cool before opening the cover.**
- **Do not touch the fan. The fan can switch on automatically regardless of whether the ignition is switched on.**

Power steering

If the warning lamp, is lit up there is a fault in the power steering.

The power steering system functions with reduced power steering effect.

Seek professional help.

Stability Control (ESC)

If the control lamp flashes, the ESC is working.

If the warning lamp lights up on ignition the ESC system may have switched off due to technical reasons. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again. Upon switching on the ignition again, if the warning lamp has switched off, this means the ESC is functioning correctly again.

If the warning lamp, is lit up there is a fault in the ESC.

The informative display indicates:

Report No.: Stability control (ESC)

or

Report No.: Traction control system (ASR)

Seek professional help.

Further information ⇒ page 141, Stability system (ESC).

Note

If the battery is disconnected and connected again, the yellow warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. This warning lamp must switch off after covering a short distance.

Traction control system (ASR)

If the control lamp flashes, the ASR is working.

If the warning lamp lights up on ignition the ASR system may have switched off due to technical reasons. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again. Upon switching on the ignition again, if the warning lamp has switched off, this means the ASR is functioning correctly again.

If the warning lamp, remains lit up there is a fault in the ASR.

The informative display indicates:

Report No.: Traction control system (ASR)

Seek professional help.

Further information ⇒ page 142, Traction control system (ASR).

Anti-lock system (ABS)

If the warning lamp, is lit up there is a fault in the ABS.

The informative display indicates:

ABS fault

The brake system alone is operational in the vehicle, without ABS.

Seek professional help.

WARNING

- **If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ page 98.**
- **If the warning lamp ⇒ page 66 lights up together with the warning lamp , , Stop the vehicle! Seek professional help.**
- **A fault in the Anti-lock brake system (ABS) can lead to longer braking distances – Risk of accident!**

Rear fog light

The control lamp lights up when the rear fog light is switched on ⇒ page 96.

Bulb fault

The control lamp lights up when there is a fault in a bulb:

- For several seconds after switching on the ignition
- When connecting a faulty bulb

This is indicated on the informative display, e.g.:

Check the front right dipped beam headlight!

Note

The rear side lights and number plate light contain several bulbs. The control lamp lights up only when there is a fault in all the number plate bulbs or side light bulbs (of a combined tail light). Therefore it is advisable to regularly check the bulb operation.

Emission control system

If the warning lamp is lit up, there is a fault in the emission system. The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program.

Seek professional help.

Preheating (diesel engines)

When you switch on the ignition, the warning lamp lights up. The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

If the warning lamp **does not light up** or **if it does not switch off**, there is a fault in the glow plug system.

If the warning lamp starts to **flash** while driving, there is a fault in the engine power control electronic system. The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program.

Seek professional help. ■

Engine management EPC (diesel engines)

If the warning lamp **EPC** is lit up, there is a fault in the engine management system. The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program.

Seek professional help. ■

Particulate filter (diesel engines)

The particulate filter eliminates soot from emissions. The particles accumulate in the filter where they are normally burned off.

If the warning lamp is lit up, the filter is obstructed by soot.

In order for the filter to clean itself (if the traffic conditions ⇒ so permit) it is essential to drive for at least 15 minutes (or until the warning lamp switches off) with 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S) at a minimum speed of 60 km/h (37 mph) with the engine speed between 1800-2500 1/min.

The warning lamp switches off once the filter has been successfully cleaned.

If the cleaning process is not successful, the warning lamp does not switch off and the warning lamp starts to flash.

The informative display indicates:

Diesel particulate filter. Instruction Manual!

The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program. When switching the ignition off and on again, the warning lamp also lights up.

Seek professional help.

WARNING

- **The particulate filter attains very high temperatures. Therefore, do not park the vehicle in places where the exhaust pipe could come into contact with dry grass or with highly-flammable materials. Risk of fire!**
- **Always adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. Never be encouraged, by the recommendations shown in the warning lamps, to fail to respect traffic legislation.**

CAUTION

While the warning lamp is lit up, the fuel consumption is high, and in certain conditions, the engine power is reduced.

Note

- In order for the particulate filter to burn off soot in a correct manner, avoid carrying out frequent short journeys.
- Using diesel fuel with a high sulphur count can considerably reduce the useful life of the particulate filter. The specialised service provides information about the countries where fuel with a high sulphur content is used. ■

Fuel reserve

The warning lamp lights up when approximately only 7 litres of fuel remain in the tank. ▶

The informative display indicates:

Refuel! Fuel range...km...(miles)

Note

The message on the display switches off only after refuelling and carrying out a short journey.

Airbag system

If the warning lamp is lit up, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The informative display indicates:

Airbag fault!

The airbag system availability is controlled electronically, regardless of whether an airbag is disabled.

If the front airbag, side airbag, head protection airbag or the belt tensioner are disabled using the diagnostics system:

- After switching on the ignition, the warning lamp lights up for around 4 seconds and flashes for another 12 seconds.

The informative display indicates:

Airbag/belt tensioner disabled!

If the front passenger airbag has been disabled with the airbag switch located in the storage compartment side:

- When the ignition is turned on, the warning light switches on for around 4 seconds.
- The airbag is disabled, signalled with the warning lamp **OFF** which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** placed in the centre part of the dash panel ⇒ Fig. 24 ⇒ page 44.

WARNING

When there is a fault in the airbag system, have an inspection carried out by an Authorised Service. Otherwise the airbags may fail to trigger in an accident.

Tyre pressure monitoring

If the warning lamp lights up, the pressure of a tyre has decreased significantly. Check and adjust the pressure of all the tyres ⇒ page 187.

If the warning lamp flashes, there is a fault in the system.

Seek professional help.

Further information ⇒ page 192, Tyre pressure.

Note

If the battery is disconnected the warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. This warning lamp must switch off after covering a short distance.

Windscreen washer fluid level

If the warning lamp lights up, the level of windscreen washer fluid in the tank is very low. Fill the windscreen washer fluid ⇒ page 182, Windscreen washer.

The informative display indicates:

Refill windscreen washer fluid! ■

Turn signals

Depending on the position of the turn signal lever the left warning lamp on the left or right flashes.

If there is a turn signal fault the warning lamp flashes at approximately double speed.

All the turn signals flash in addition to both warning lamps when the hazard warning lights are switched on.

Further information ⇒ page 97, Turn signal and main beam lever. ■

Fog lights

The control lamp lights up when the fog lights are switched on ⇒ page 95. ■

Cruise speed

The warning lamp lights up when the cruise control is switched on (cruise speed) ⇒ page 149. ■

Selector lever lock

If the control lamp lights up, press the brake pedal. This is necessary when you require the automatic gearbox selector lever to move out of the positions **P** or **N** ⇒ page 146. ■

Mean beams

The warning lamp lights up with the main beam headlights or when the headlights are flashed ⇒ page 97. ■

Communication

Steering wheel controls

General information

The vehicle includes a multifunction module from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone and radio/navigation functions without needing to distract the driver.

There are two versions of the multifunction module:

- Audio version, to control the available audio functions from the steering wheel (Radio, CD audio, MP3 CD, iPod®[1], USB[1]).
- Audio version + telephone, to control the available audio functions from the steering wheel (Radio, CD audio, MP3 CD, iPod®[1], USB[1], SD[1]) and the Bluetooth system.

[1] Depending on the vehicle equipment.

Audio system adjustment

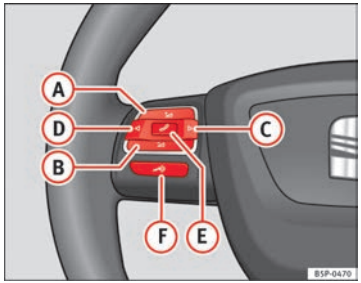

Fig. 36 Controls on the steering wheel

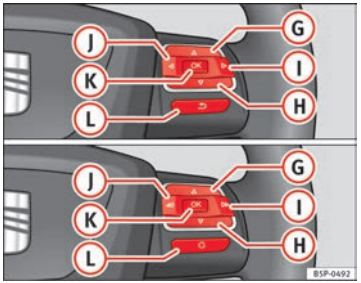

Fig. 37 Steering wheel controls (depending on version of model)

Button	Radio	CD/MP3/USB*/iPod®*	AUX
A	Volume up	Volume up	Volume up
B	Volume down	Volume down	Volume down
C	Search for next station	Next track Hold down: Fast forward	No function specified
D	Search for last station	Previous track Hold down: Rewind	No function specified
E	No function specified	No function specified	No function specified
F	Silence	Pause	Silence
G[a]	Operates on instrument panel display	Operates on instrument panel display	Operates on instrument panel display
	Next preset[b]	Next track[b]	No function specified[b]
H[a]	Operates on instrument panel display	Operates on instrument panel display	Operates on instrument panel display
	Previous preset[b]	Previous track[b]	No function specified[b]
I[a]	Next preset	Change folder	No function specified
	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel

Button	Radio	CD/MP3/USB*/iPod®*	AUX
J[a)]	Previous preset	Change folder	No function specified
	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel
K	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel
L[a)]	Change source	Change source	Change source
	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel

a) Depending on the model version

b) Only if the panel is in Audio menu.

Audio + Telephone system operation

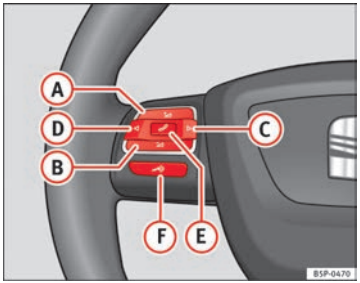

Fig. 38 Controls on the steering wheel

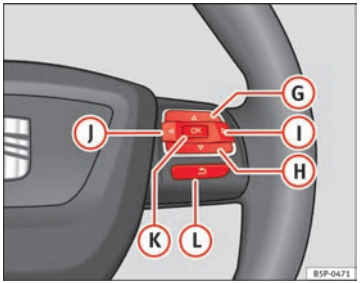

Fig. 39 Steering wheel controls (depending on version of model)

Button	Radio	CD/MP3/USB*/iPod®*	AUX	TELEPHONE
A	Volume up	Volume up	Volume up	Volume up
B	Volume down	Volume down	Volume down	Volume down
C	Search for next station	Next track Hold down: Fast forward	No function specified	No function specified

Button	Radio	CD/MP3/USB*/iPod®*	AUX	TELEPHONE
D	Search for last station	Previous track Hold down: Rewind	No function specified	No function specified
E	Access telephone menu on instrument panel	Access telephone menu on instrument panel	Access telephone menu on instrument panel	Make call Accept incoming call End call Hold down: reject incoming call
F	Enable voice recognition	Enable voice recognition	Enable voice recognition	Activate voice control/ Interrupt current message/ Deactivate voice control
G	Next preset[a)]	Next track[a)]	No function specified	Previous option in the menu/ list/ selection shown on instrument panel[b)]
H	Previous preset[a)]	Previous track[a)]	No function specified	Next option in the menu/ list/ selection shown on instrument panel[b)]
I	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel
J	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel
K	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Confirm
L	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Back to last-opened menu

a) Only if the panel is in Audio menu.

b) Only if the instrument panel is in the “TELEPHONE” menu. Examples of use: Agenda, List of calls, Select numbers, Select letters, Main menu.

Radio-Navigation + Telephone Systems operation

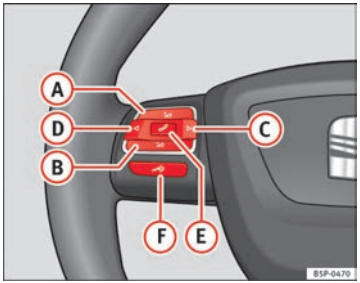

Fig. 40 Controls on the steering wheel

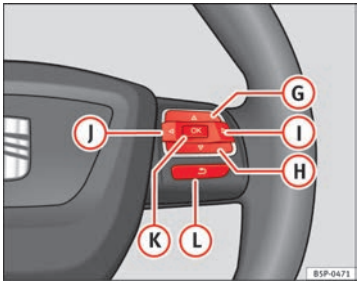

Fig. 41 Steering wheel controls (depending on version of model)

Button	Radio	CD/MP3/USB*/iPod®*	AUX	NAVIGATOR	TELEPHONE
A	Volume up	Volume up	Volume up	Volume up	Volume up
B	Volume down	Volume down	Volume down	Volume down	Volume down
C	Search for next station	Next track Hold down: Fast forward	No function specified	No function specified	No function specified
D	Search for last station	Previous track Hold down: Rewind	No function specified	No function specified	No function specified

Button	Radio	CD/MP3/USB*/iPod®*	AUX	NAVIGATOR	TELEPHONE
E	Access telephone menu in the instrument panel	Access telephone menu in the instrument panel	Access telephone menu in the instrument panel	Access telephone menu in the instrument panel	Accept incoming call (press briefly) Access telephone menu in the instrument panel Reject incoming call (press and hold down) End ongoing call/establish call (press briefly) Switch to private mode (press and hold down) Redial last number (press and hold down)[a]
F	Activation of voice recognition for mobile telephone connected to the system (if the telephone has this function)*	Activation of voice recognition for mobile telephone connected to the system (if the telephone has this function)*	Activation of voice recognition for mobile telephone connected to the system (if the telephone has this function)*	Activation of voice recognition for mobile telephone connected to the system (if the telephone has this function)*	Activation of voice recognition for mobile telephone connected to the system (if the telephone has this function)*
G	Next preset[b]	Next track[b]	No function specified	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel/ No function specified
H	Previous preset[b]	Previous track[b]	No function specified	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel/ No function specified
I	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel
J	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel
K	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel/ No function specified
L	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel	Operates on instrument panel/ No function specified

a) For a more detailed description of how to use this button, please refer to the Radio navigation System User Handbook (SEAT Media System 2.2)

b) Only if the panel is in Audio menu.

Note

iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. ■

Multimedia

AUX-IN and MDI Inputs

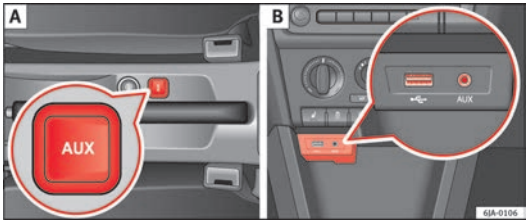

Fig. 42 AUX-IN input/MDI input

The operating description is located in the respective Instruction Manuals of the audio system or the navigation system.

AUX-IN Input

The AUX-IN input is located in one of the following places:

- in the centre console between the front seats ⇒ Fig. 42 - A;
- above the storage compartment in the front centre console ⇒ Fig. 42 - B;
- in the front panel of the SEAT Media System 2.2 navigation system.

The purpose of the AUX-IN input is to connect external devices in order to play music (i.e. iPod® or an mp3 player) using the factory-fitted audio system or the navigation system.

MDI Input

The MDI input is located above the storage compartment in the front centre console ⇒ Fig. 42 - B;

The MDI input is composed of the USB and AUX-IN inputs.

The purpose of the MDI input is to connect external devices (i.e. iPod®, mp3 players or USB memories) in order to play music using the audio system or the navigation system.

In order to connect Apple multimedia devices (such as an iPod®/iPhone®...) the corresponding adaptor from the SEAT Original Accessories catalogue is required. ■

Opening and closing

Keys

General notes

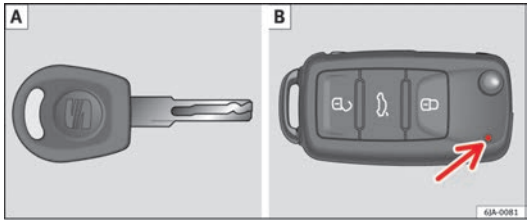

Fig. 43 Key with remote control/Key without remote control

Two keys are always supplied with the vehicle. Depending on the model version, your car may include keys without remote control ⇒ Fig. 43 A or with remote control ⇒ Fig. 43 B.

WARNING

- **Never leave the key inside whenever you leave the vehicle - even if only for a moment. This is particularly important if children are to remain in the vehicle. They might start the engine or some other electrical component, e.g. electric windows. Risk of injury!**
- **Wait until the vehicle has completely stopped before taking the key out of the ignition. Otherwise the steering wheel may lock suddenly. Risk of accident!**

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components and must, therefore, be protected from damp and strong vibrations.
- Keep the grooves in the key shaft clean. Any dirt (fibre from clothing, dust, etc.) has a negative impact on locks, ignition, etc.

Note

Should a key be lost, request a duplicate key from an Authorised SEAT dealer. ■

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

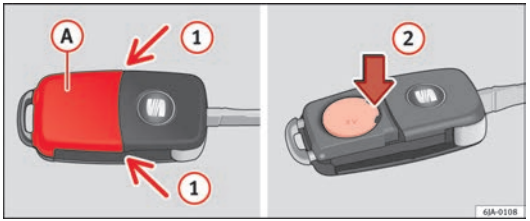

Fig. 44 Remote control key: removing the cover/taking out the battery

Each remote control key contains a battery that is fitted below the cover (A) ⇒ Fig. 44. If the battery is flat, the red control lamp ⇒ Fig. 43 B will not light up when one of the buttons is pressed. ▶

We recommend replacing the battery at a SEAT dealer. You can replace the battery yourself as follows.

– Unfold the key shaft.

– Remove the battery cover by pressing down with your thumb or a flat screwdriver in the location of the arrows (1) ⇒ Fig. 44.

– Remove the flat battery from the key by pressing downwards in the location of the arrows (2).

– Insert the new battery. Check that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is indicated on the battery cover.

– Replace the battery cover and press down until it clicks.

CAUTION

- The correct polarity must always be observed when replacing the battery.
- The new battery must be of the same type as the original.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in line with national legislation.

Note

If it is not possible to unlock or lock the door with the remote control key once the battery has been replaced, it will need to be re-synchronised ⇒ page 88.

Childproof locks

Fig. 45 Activating the childproof lock

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside. Doors can only be opened from the outside.

The childproof lock is activated and deactivated using the ignition key.

Activating the childproof lock

– Turn the slot in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 45 (in the other direction on the right-hand door).

Deactivating the childproof lock

– Turn the slot in the opposite direction of the arrow (in the other direction on the right-hand door).

Central locking system

General notes

All of the doors will unlock or lock at the same time when the central locking system is used. The rear lid is unlocked. It is then possible to open the rear lid by pressing the release catch located at the top of the registration plate recess ⇒ page 90.

Warning lamp on the driver door

Once the doors are locked, the warning lamp will flash quickly for 2 seconds and then at a slower rate.

If the vehicle is locked with the Safe lock engaged ⇒ page 83, the warning lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for 2 seconds before switching off for 30 seconds and then flashing at a slower rate.

If the warning lamp flashes quickly for 2 seconds and then remains switched on before flashing at a slower rate after 30 seconds, there is a fault in the interior monitor and tow-away protection system ⇒ page 89. Seek professional help. ■

Individual settings

Unlocking single doors

This optional function unlocks the driver door only. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the next command is given (unlock).

Automatic unlock and lock

The doors and the rear lid are locked automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of about 15 km/h (9 mph).

The doors unlock automatically when the key is removed from the ignition. Additionally, the driver or front passenger can unlock the doors by pressing the 🔒 ⇒ page 85 central lock button or by pulling the front door handle.

⚠ WARNING

Locking the doors prevents intruders from getting into the car, e.g. while waiting at junctions. However, it can also delay assistance in the event of an accident. Risk of death!

Note

- Activation of the single door setting can be requested at your SEAT dealer.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags activate, the doors will be automatically unlocked for easier access and assistance.
- If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, only the driver door can be locked or unlocked using the key ⇒ page 85. All other doors and the rear lid can be operated manually.
  - Manual release ⇒ page 86.
  - Manual release of the rear lid ⇒ page 91. ■

Safe Lock

The central locking system is equipped with a **Safe lock**. If the vehicle is closed from outside, the door locks will automatically lock. The warning lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for 2 seconds and then at a slower rate. It is not possible to open any of the doors from the inside or outside using the handle. This limits the possibility of intruders getting into the vehicle.

The Safe lock can be deactivated by pressing the lock button twice in less than 2 seconds. ▶

If the Safe lock is out of service, the control lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for 2 seconds before switching off for 30 seconds and then flashing at a slower rate.

The Safe lock is re-activated on unlocking and locking the vehicle again.

If the vehicle is locked and the Safe lock is deactivated, the vehicle can be opened from inside by pulling on the door handle.

WARNING

Do not leave people or animals in locked vehicles with the Safe lock activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Doors locked in this manner could delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of death!

Note

- The anti-theft alarm switches on automatically when the vehicle is locked, even if the Safe lock is deactivated. The Vehicle interior monitoring, however, is not activated.
- Given that the Safe function will be activated on locking the vehicle, **CHECK DEADLOCK** will be shown on the general instrument panel display. On vehicles equipped with an informative display, **Caution SAFE! On-board documentation! will be indicated.**

Unlocking the vehicle with the key

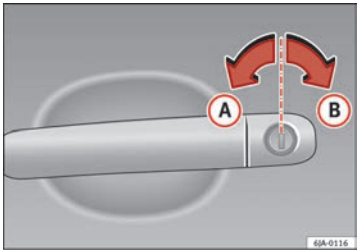

Fig. 46 Key positions during vehicle locking and unlocking

– Turn the key in the driver door in the forward driving direction to its unlock position (A) ⇒ Fig. 46.

– Pull the handle and open the door.

- All doors (driver door only on vehicles with anti-theft alarm) are unlocked.
- The rear lid is unlocked.
- The courtesy lights switch on.
- The Safe lock is deactivated.
- The driver door warning lamp stops flashing (on vehicles not equipped with an anti-theft system) ⇒ page 88.

Note

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, you have 15 seconds as of opening the door to insert the key in the ignition and start the vehicle. If, during these 15 seconds, **the vehicle is not started**, **the alarm is triggered**.

Locking the vehicle with the key

– Turn the key in the driver door lock cylinder in the reverse direction to its lock position (B) ⇒ Fig. 46.

- The doors and the rear lid are locked.
- The courtesy lights switch off.
- The Safe lock is immediately activated.
- Warning lamp on the driver door starts to flash.

Note

The vehicle doors cannot be locked if the driver door is open.

Central lock button

Fig. 47 Central lock button

If the vehicle has not been locked from outside, it is possible to lock and unlock the doors from inside by pressing the ⇒ Fig. 47 button, even without the key in the ignition.

Locking all doors and rear lid

– Press the button ⇒ Fig. 47. The warning lamp on the button will light up.

Unlocking all doors and rear lid

– Press the button ⇒ Fig. 47. The warning lamp on the button will switch off.

If the vehicle has been locked using the central lock button.

- The rear lid cannot be unlocked from outside (security measure, e.g. when stopped at a junction).
- The doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the handle.
- The vehicle doors cannot be locked if any of the doors are open.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags activate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked for easier access and assistance.

WARNING

The central locking system remains operative when the ignition is switched off. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, as locked doors delay assistance in an emergency. Doors locked from the inside delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of death!

Note

The handles and the central lock buttons will not work if the Safe lock ⇒ page 83 is activated.

Manual locking

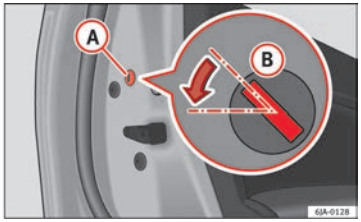

Fig. 48 Rear door: manual locking

On the front of a door with no lock cylinder there is an emergency locking device that is only visible when the door is open.

Locking

– Remove the cap (A) ⇒ Fig. 48.

– Insert the key in the slot (B) and turn it in the direction of the arrow until horizontal (on the other direction on the right-hand door).

– Replace the cap.

Once the door has been locked, it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle. ■

Remote control

General notes

The remote control key can

- Lock and unlock the vehicle
- Unlock or open the rear lid

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are integrated in the key. The receiver is inside the vehicle. The remote control key has a maximum range of 30 metres. The range is reduced as the batteries start to lose power.

The key includes a foldaway part that can be used to manually lock or unlock the vehicle and to start the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or the receiver is repaired or changed, the remove control key must be adapted by an authorised SEAT dealer. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

Note

- The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- The remote control function may be temporarily limited by interference from other transmitters near the vehicle that operate on the same frequency (e.g. mobile phone, television transmitter).
- If the central locking system or the anti-theft alarm only responds to the remote control at a distance of less than 3 m, then the battery much be replaced ⇒ page 81.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle can not be locked using the remote control. ■

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

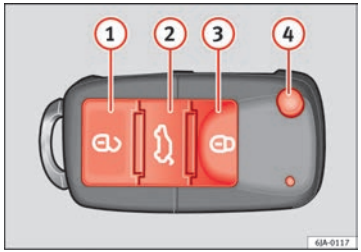

Fig. 49 Remote control key

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press button (1).

Locking the vehicle

– Press button (3).

Deactivating the Safe lock

– Press button (3) twice in 2 seconds. Further information ⇒ page 83.

Unlocking the rear lid

– Press button (2). Further information ⇒ page 90.

Unfolding the key shaft

– Press button (4).

Folding the key shaft

– Press button (4) and fold the key shaft back to its original position.

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using button (1) and none of the doors or the rear lid is opened in the following 30 seconds, the vehicle will automatically relock and the Safe lock or the anti-theft alarm will be activated. This function prevents the vehicle from being unlocked by mistake.

Locking indication

The turn signals will flash if the vehicle has been correctly locked.

Should any of the doors or the rear lid remain open when the vehicle is locked, the turn signals will only flash when it is closed.

WARNING

Do not leave people or animals in vehicles locked from outside with the Safe lock activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Doors locked in this manner could delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of death!

Note

- Only use the remote control when the doors and the rear lid are locked and the vehicle is within sight.
- Do not press the lock button on the remote control before inserting the key in the ignition, otherwise the vehicle could be locked by mistake. Should this occur, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Remote control synchronisation

If the vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked using the remote control, the code of the key might not match that of the control unit. This can occur when the remote control buttons are frequently pressed outside the range of the system or if the remote control battery has been replaced.

In this case, it must be synchronised as follows:

- Press any key on the remote control key.
- Open the door using the key within the next minute.

Anti-theft alarm system

General notes

The anti-theft alarm system increases vehicle protection from intruders. If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm.

Activating the alarm system

The anti-theft alarm switches on automatically when the vehicle is locked using the remote control key or inserting the key in the driver door. The alarm is activated around 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating the alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated when the remote control unlock button is pressed. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after emitting the radiofrequency signal, the system will be reactivated.

If the vehicle is unlocked using by inserting the key in the driver door, the ignition must be switched on within 15 seconds. This deactivates the alarm system. If, during these 15 seconds, **the vehicle is not started**, **the alarm is triggered**.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The following areas of the vehicle are monitored:

- Bonnet
- Rear lid
- Doors
- Ignition
- Tilt angle ⇒ page 89, Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system
- The interior ⇒ page 89, Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system
- Drop in voltage in the car systems
- The factory-fitted towing bracket

The alarm is triggered immediately if one of the battery cables is disconnected while the alarm system is active.

How to turn off the alarm

To deactivate the alarm, press the unlock button on the remote control key or switch on the ignition.

Note

- The alarm horn power supply has a 5-year useful life. Contact an Official Service for more detailed information.
- To make sure that the anti-theft alarm is fully operative when leaving the vehicle, check that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Remote control and receiver unit coding means that the remote control cannot be used on other vehicles.

Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system

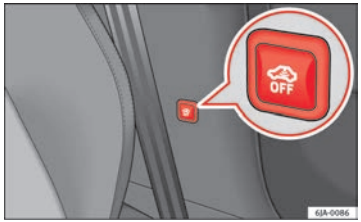

Fig. 50 Button for Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system

The Vehicle interior monitoring system is activated if movements are detected in the interior of the vehicle.

Deactivating Vehicle interior monitoring and the tow-away protection system

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the driver door.

– Press the ⇒ Fig. 50 button on the centre column. The red backlit symbol on the button turns orange.

– Lock the vehicle within the next 30 seconds.

The Vehicle interior monitoring system and the tow-away protection system are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked again.

Note

- The Vehicle interior monitoring system and the tow-away protection system must be deactivated if there is a danger of the alarm being triggered due to movements by children or animals in the interior during either transport (e.g. by boat or by train) or towing.
- The effectiveness of the Vehicle interior monitoring system is reduced if the spectacle case is left open. Always close the case before locking the vehicle to ensure the Vehicle interior monitoring system operates correctly.

Rear lid

Introduction

WARNING

- **After closing the lid, check that the catch has engaged properly. The lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving, even if the lock is engaged. Risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, as exhaust gases can be drawn into the interior. Risk of intoxication!**
- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing down on the rear window, as it could break. Risk of injury!**

Note

- **Once the rear lid is closed, its lock is engaged and the alarm system is activated.** Only valid if the vehicle has been locked before the rear lid is closed.
- The release catch located at the top of the registration plate recess is deactivated on accelerating or at speeds of over 5 km/h (3 mph). The catch is reactivated when the vehicle comes to a standstill and a door is opened.

Automatic rear lid locking

Where the vehicle has been locked by pressing the button on the remote control with the rear lid open, the rear lid will lock automatically when closed.

The automatic rear lid locking time extension function can be activated. Where this function is activated and once the rear lid has been unlocked by pressing the button on the remote control key 2 ⇒ page 87, the rear lid can be re-opened for a certain length of time.

Where required, the automatic rear lid locking time extension function can be activated or deactivated at a SEAT Authorised Service, which will provide all of the necessary information.

Before the vehicle locks automatically, there is a risk of intruders getting into the vehicle. Therefore, we recommend you always lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control or by using the key without remote control ⇒ page 85 ■

Rear lid

The rear lid opening system is electrically operated. It is activated by using the catch on the rear lid.

Fig. 51 Rear lid: opening from the outside

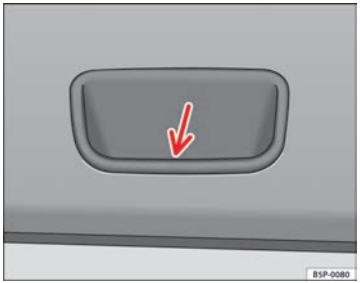

Fig. 52 Close-up of the inside trim of the rear lid: hand grip ▶

Opening the rear lid

– Pull on the release lever and lift the rear lid ⇒ Fig. 51. The rear lid will automatically open.

Closing the rear lid

– Hold the rear lid by one of the two handles on the interior lining and close it, pushing slightly.

This system may or may not be operative, depending on the situation of the vehicle.

If the rear lid is locked then it cannot be opened, however if it is unlocked then the opening system is operative and the rear lid may be opened.

To lock/unlock, press the button or button 1 on the remote control key.

A warning appears on the instrument panel display if the rear lid is open or not properly closed.* An audible warning is also given if the rear lid opens while the vehicle is moving faster than 6 km/h (4 mph).*

WARNING

- **Always close the rear lid properly. Risk of accident or injury.**
- **The rear lid must not be opened when the reverse or rear fog lights are lit. This may damage the tail lights.**
- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. The glass could smash. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the rear lid is locked after closing it. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the rear lid and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Closing the rear lid without observing and ensuring it is clear could cause serious injury to you and to third parties. Make sure that no one is ever in the closing path of the rear lid.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, as exhaust gases can be drawn into the interior. Risk of intoxication!**
- **If you open the rear lid only, do not leave the key inside. The vehicle cannot be opened if the key is left inside.**

Manual release of the rear lid

Fig. 53 Manual release of the rear lid

In the event of a fault in the central locking system, the rear lid can be released manually.

Release

– Fold down the backrest of the rear seat ⇒ page 110.

– Insert the car key in the opening in the mat.

– Move it towards the arrow to release the rear lid.

– Open the rear lid. ■

Opening and closing electric windows

Introduction

WARNING

- **When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that nobody is inside the vehicle, as the windows cannot be opened from the inside in an emergency.**
- **For safety reasons, use the safety button (S) ⇒ Fig. 54 that deactivates the window switches in the rear doors when children are travelling in the rear seats.**

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the system operates correctly.
- Defrost ⇒ page 167, Windows and exterior mirrors any frozen windows before use. Risk of damaging the electric window riser mechanism.
- Always make sure all of the windows are closed on leaving the locked vehicle.

Note

- The vehicle heating and ventilation system should be used to ventilate the interior while driving. Leaving the windows open could allow dust and other dirt to enter the vehicle and cause unpleasant noises at certain speeds.
- Do not leave the side windows open at high speeds, as this will overly increase fuel consumption. ■

Controls on the driver door and on the rear doors

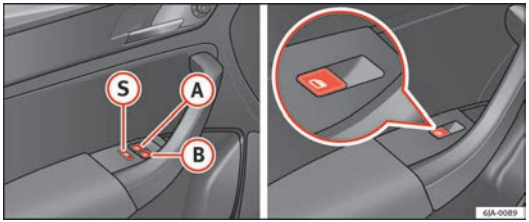

Fig. 54 Controls on the driver door/on the rear doors

The electric window opening and closing system only works when the ignition is switched on.

Opening

– Press gently on the respective button on the door to open the window. The process will stop when the button is released. ▶

– The driver door window can also be automatically opened by pressing the button as far as it will go (fully open). Press the button again to immediately stop it.

Closing

– Press the respective button gently to close the window. The process will stop when the button is released.

Window controls on the driver armrest

(A) Window control on the driver door

(B) Window control on the front passenger door

(S) Safety button

Safety button

Press the safety button (S) ⇒ Fig. 54 to deactivate the controls on the rear doors. Pressing the safety button (S) again will reactivate the controls on the rear doors.

If the rear door controls are deactivated, the warning lamp on the safety button (S) will light up.

Note

The electric window opening mechanism is equipped with a thermostat switch. This may overheat if the window is opened and closed repeatedly. This causes the window to lock temporarily. Once the thermostat switch has cooled down the window can be operated once again.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

The location of the controls of **right-hand drive** cars differs slightly from the location shown here ⇒ Fig. 55 ⇒ page 94. However, the symbols indicating the respective positions of the controls remain the same.

WARNING

Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you. Always use your dipped beam headlights if it is dark or if visibility is poor.

CAUTION

- Use the lights in line with local law.
- However, drivers always remain responsible for correctly adjusting and using the lights.

Note

- An audible warning will be heard when the light control is set to and you remove the ignition key and open the door. Once the driver door is closed (ignition off), the audible warning will stop, whereas the side lights will remain on to light up the stationary vehicle if necessary.
- Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the lights may mist up temporarily on the inside. This is particularly the case in the event of a difference in temperature between the inside and in front of the light. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted, although the edges may remain misted. The real lights and turn signals can mist up. This has no influence on the useful life of the lighting system. ■

Switching lights on and off

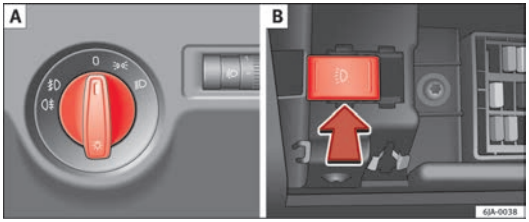

Fig. 55 Instrument panel: Light switch/Fuses: Switch for daytime driving lights

Switching on side lights

– Turn the light switch ⇒ Fig. 55 A to position .

Switching on dipped beam

– Turn the light switch ⇒ Fig. 55 A to position .

Switching off lights (except daytime driving lights)

– Turn the light switch ⇒ Fig. 55 A to position 0. ■

DAY LIGHT Function*

Switching on daytime driving lights

Turn the light switch ⇒ Fig. 55 A ⇒ page 94 to position 0.

Switching off daytime driving lights

– Remove the fuse cover on the dash panel ⇒ page 211, Fuses in the dash panel.

– Press the ⇒ Fig. 55 B button ⇒ page 94 **to the right**.

Switching on daytime driving lights

– Remove the fuse cover on the dash panel ⇒ page 211, Fuses in the dash panel.

– Press the ⇒ Fig. 55 B button ⇒ page 94 **to the left**.

Switching off daytime driving lights in vehicles with the START-STOP system

– Switch the ignition off.

– Move the turn signal lever ⇒ Fig. 58 towards the steering wheel, pressing it down and keeping it in this position.

– Switch on the ignition – wait for the left turn signal to flash 4 times.

– Switch off the ignition – wait until you hear the audible warning to confirm that the daytime driving lights have been switched off.

– Release the turn signal lever.

Switching on daytime driving lights in vehicles with the START-STOP system

– Switch the ignition off.

– Move the turn signal lever ⇒ Fig. 58 towards the steering wheel, pressing it up and keeping it in this position.

– Switch on the ignition – wait for the right turn signal to flash 4 times.

– Switch off the ignition – wait until you hear the audible warning to confirm that the daytime driving lights have been switched on.

– Release the turn signal lever.

Note

The daytime driving lights work when the ignition is switched on. ■

Front fog lights

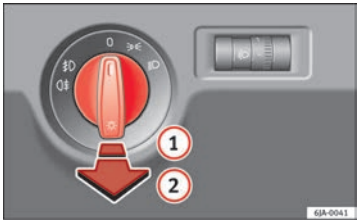

Fig. 56 Instrument panel: light switch ▶

Switching on front fog lights

– First turn the light switch ⇒ Fig. 56 to position ≋ or ≋D.

– Pull on the light switch to position (1).

The ≋D ⇒ page 65 warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the front fog lights are switched on. ■

Rear fog light

Switching on the rear fog light

– First turn the light switch ⇒ Fig. 56 ⇒ page 95 to position ≋ or ≋D.

– Pull on the light switch to position (2).

If the vehicle is not equipped with front fog lights ⇒ page 95, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the switch to position ≋D and pulling it to position (2). This type of switch only has one position.

The ≋ ⇒ page 65 warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the front fog lights are switched on.

If you are towing a trailer or caravan equipped with a rear fog light on a vehicle with a **factory-fitted towing bracket or one installed using parts from the original SEAT parts catalogue**, only the rear fog light on the trailer or caravan will light up. ■

Range control of main lights ≋D

Fig. 57 Instrument panel: light range control

– Turn the control ⇒ Fig. 57 to set the lights to the required setting.

Positions

The control positions roughly correspond to the following vehicle load conditions.

(-) Two front occupants, luggage compartment empty.
(1) All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
(2) All seats occupied, luggage compartment fully loaded.
(3) Driver only, luggage compartment fully loaded.

CAUTION

Always adjust the range of the lights so that:

- Your vehicle does not dazzle others, particularly oncoming traffic
- The range of the headlights is sufficient for safe driving ▶

Note

Make sure you set the range of the main lights when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

Turn signal and main beam lever

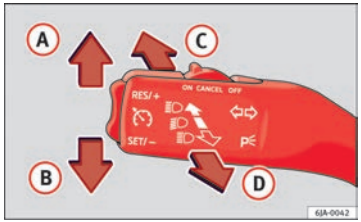

Fig. 58 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

The turn signal and main beam headlight lever also operates the parking lights and the headlight flasher.

Right and left-hand ⇨ turn signal ⇦

– Move the lever ⇒ Fig. 58 up (A) or down (B).

– In order for the turn signals to flash three times (turn signal to change lanes), move the lever briefly up or down just as far as point of resistance and then release it.

– Keep the lever held down at the point of resistance for the turn signals to flash for as long as you hold the lever, e.g. when changing lanes.

Mean beams ≡D

– Switch on the dipped beam ⇒ page 94.

– Press the lever ⇒ Fig. 58 forwards in the direction indicated by arrow (C).

– Pull the lever back to its original position in the direction indicated by arrow (D) to switch the main beam off.

Headlight flasher ≡D

– Pull the lever ⇒ Fig. 58 towards the steering wheel (point of resistance) in the direction indicated by arrow (D).

Parking lights P⋹

Instructions for use ⇒ page 98.

CAUTION

Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

- **The turn signals** only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning lamp ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the general instrument panel.
- The turn signals switch off automatically when the steering wheel is returned to the straight-ahead position.
- If a turn signal bulb is defective, the control lamp flashes at double speed.

Parking lights*

Parking lights

– Switch the ignition off.

– Move the turn signal lever ⇒ Fig. 58 ⇒ page 97 up or down to turn on the right or left-hand parking lights respectively.

Parking light on both sides

– Turn the light switch ⇒ Fig. 55 A ⇒ page 94 to position and engage the steering lock.

Note

- The parking lights only work when the ignition is switched on.
- The parking light will not come on automatically on switching the ignition off if the left or right-hand turn signal is left on. ■

Front fog lights with CORNER function*

Front fog lights with CORNER function provide better lighting of the area around the car when driving through a corner or parking, etc.

Front fog lights with CORNER function switch on depending on how far you turn the steering wheel or whether or not the turn signals[1] are switched on, if the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is stationary, the ignition is switched on or you are moving at a speed less than 40 km/h (25 mph)
- The daytime driving light is switched off
- The dipped beam is switched on
- The fog lights are switched off
- Reverse gear is not engaged ■

[1] In the event of a conflict between both functions, i.e. if you turn the steering wheel to the left while the right-hand turn signal is on, the turn signals will take priority.

Hazard warning light switch

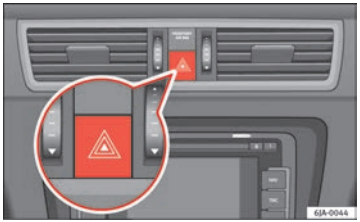

Fig. 59 Instrument panel: switch for hazard warning lights

– Press the button ⚠ ⇒ Fig. 59 to switch the hazard warning lights on or off.

The warning lamps on the instrument panel and the warning lamp in the switch will flash at the same time as the turn signals when the hazard warning lights are switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning lights come on automatically in the event of an accident in which an airbag is triggered. ▶

Note

Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users, for example:

- When reaching the tail end of a traffic jam
- If the vehicle has a technical fault or you are involved in an emergency situation. ■

Interior lights

Interior lighting – version 1

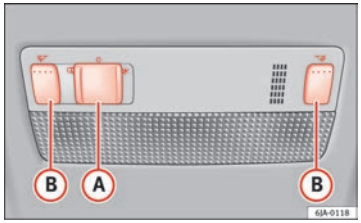

Fig. 60 Interior lighting – version 1

Switching on the interior light

– Move the switch (A) ⇒ Fig. 60 towards the side of the light. The symbol will be displayed.

Switching off the interior light

– Move the switch (A) ⇒ Fig. 60 to the centre position **O**.

Operating the courtesy light

– Move the switch (A) ⇒ Fig. 60 to the centre of the light. The symbol will be displayed.

Reading lights

– The reading lights are switched on and off by pressing switch (B) ⇒ Fig. 60.

Where the courtesy light is on (switch (A) ⇒ Fig. 60 in position), the light will come on if:

- The vehicle is unlocked
- One of the doors is opened
- The key is removed from the ignition

When the courtesy light is on (switch (A) in position), the light will switch off if:

- The vehicle is locked
- The ignition is switched on
- 30 seconds after all of the doors have been closed

If a door is left open or if switch (A) is in position , the interior lighting is switched off after about 10 minutes to prevent the battery from running flat. ■

Interior lighting – version 2

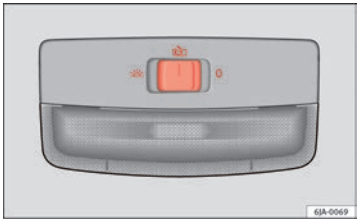

Fig. 61 Interior lighting – version 2

Switching on the interior light

– Turn the light switch to position ⇒ Fig. 61.

Switching off the interior light

– Turn the light switch to position **0**.

Operating the courtesy light

– Turn the light switch to position ⇒.

The lights in version 2 are operated using the same guidelines as ⇒ page 99, Interior lighting – version 1. ■

Rear interior light

Fig. 62 Rear interior light

Press the button ⇒ Fig. 62 to switch the lighting on or off. ■

Visibility

Heated rear window

Fig. 63 Heated rear window switch

– Switch the heated rear window on or off by pressing the button ⇒ Fig. 63, the warning lamp in the button will come on or go off respectively.

The heated rear window only works when the engine is running.

After approx. 7 minutes, the rear window heating device **switches off** automatically.

For the sake of the environment

The heated rear window should be switched off as soon as the glass is demisted. By saving electrical power you can also save fuel ⇒ page 157, Save electrical energy.

Note

In the event of a drop in voltage in the onboard systems, the heated rear window switches off automatically to ensure enough power to control the engine ⇒ page 186, Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment. ■

Sun visors

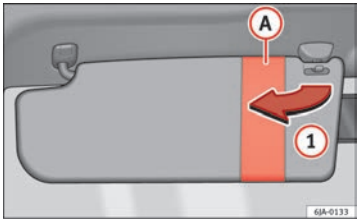

Fig. 64 Driver sun visor

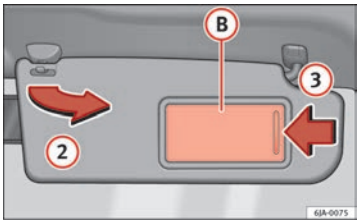

Fig. 65 Front passenger sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their central supports and turned towards the doors in the direction of arrow (1) ⇒ Fig. 64 and (2) ⇒ Fig. 65 respectively.

The strip (A) is to store small objects such as notepaper, etc.

The front passenger sun visor includes a vanity mirror (B) with a cover. The cover is opened by sliding it in the direction indicated by arrow (3) ⇒ Fig. 65. ▶

WARNING

Do not turn sun visors with attached objects such as ball-pens, etc. towards the head protection airbag triggering zone on the side windows. The head protection airbags could injure occupants if triggered.

Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers

Introduction

The windscreen wipers and windscreen washers only work when the ignition is switched on.

The rear window is wiped once if the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Fill the windscreen washer fluid ⇒ page 182.

WARNING

- **Make sure the blades ⇒ page 104 are in perfect condition for good visibility and safe driving.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the wash/wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. The windscreen washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.**

CAUTION

- During the winter, always check that the windscreen wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before each trip or before switching on the ignition. If you switch on the windscreen wipers when the wiper blades are frozen to the glass, this could damage both the wiper blades and the wiper motor.
- If the ignition is switched off when the windscreen wipers are on, they will start operating in the same mode when the ignition is switched back on. The wiper blades could be frozen to the glass at low temperatures when the ignition is switched off.
- Carefully separate the frozen wipers from the windscreen or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the wipers before starting your journey.
- Careless handling could lead to the wiper arms damaging the windscreen.
- For safety reasons, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year. They can be purchased at a SEAT Authorised Service.
- The ignition cannot be switched on while the windscreen wiper arms are in a raised position. Otherwise, the windscreen wipers would return to their original position and could damage the paintwork on the bonnet.

Note

Keep the wipers clean. The wipers can be soiled with remains of wax solutions from car washes ⇒ page 165.

- On vehicles equipped with windscreen washer jets, these are heated once the engine is running. ■

Handling windscreen wipers and washers

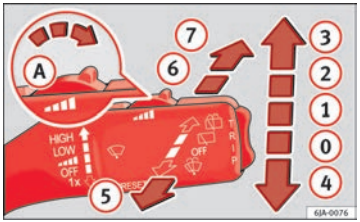

Fig. 66 Window wiper lever

Brief wipe

– Give the windscreen a **brief** wipe by moving the lever down to position (4) ⇒ Fig. 66. ▶

Interval wipe

– Move the lever up to the stop (1) ⇒ Fig. 66.

– Set the required interval wipe using the control (A).

Slow wipe

– Move the lever up to the stop (2) ⇒ Fig. 66.

Continuous wipe

– Move the lever up to the stop (3) ⇒ Fig. 66.

Automatic wash and wipe

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel, position (5) ⇒ Fig. 66, and the windscreen washer and wipers are switched on.

– Release the lever. The washer will stop and the windscreen wipers will keep running for 1–3 wipes (depending on the windscreen washer operating time).

Rear window wiper

– Press the lever forwards to the stop (6) ⇒ Fig. 66 and the rear window wiper will run every 6 seconds.

Automatic rear window wash wipe

– Press the lever forwards fully to position (7) ⇒ Fig. 66 and the rear window wiper and washer are switched on at the same time.

– Release the lever. The rear window washer will stop and the rear window wipers will keep running for 1–3 wipes (depending on the jet operating time). **When released, the lever remains in position (6).**

Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever to position (0) ⇒ Fig. 66. ■

Headlight washer system

The headlight washers operate briefly if the dipped or main beam is on and the lever is raised to position (5) ⇒ Fig. 66. The headlight washer system also operates every ten windscreen wash cycles.

Clean off stubborn dirt (insects, etc.) from the headlights at regular intervals, for instance when filling the fuel tank. Please observe the following indications ⇒ page 167, Headlights.

To ensure the system works properly in winter, keep the nozzle holders free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray.

CAUTION

Never pull on the nozzle holders. Risk of damage to the system! ■

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

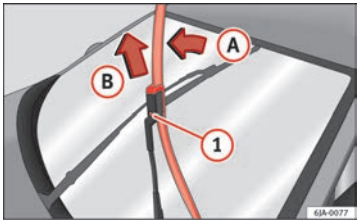

Fig. 67 Windscreen wiper blades ▶

Set the windscreen wiper arms to the service position before changing the blades.

Service position for changing wiper blades

– Close the bonnet.

– Switch the ignition on and off.

– Press the lever to position (4) ⇒ Fig. 66 ⇒ page 103, the windscreen wiper arms are set to the service position.

Taking off the wiper blade

– Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the glass moving the blade slightly in the direction of the arm – arrow (A) ⇒ Fig. 67.

– Hold the top of the windscreen wiper arm with one hand.

– Unlock the catch (1) with the other hand and remove the blade in the direction of arrow (B).

Fitting the wiper blade

– Slide the blade fully until it clicks into position.

– Check that the wiper is correctly secured.

– Fold the windscreen wiper arm back down onto the glass.

– Switch the ignition on and press the lever to position (4) ⇒ Fig. 66 ⇒ page 103, the windscreen wiper arms are set to the basic position. ■

Changing the rear window wiper blade

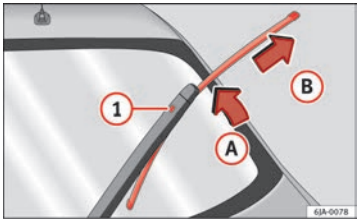

Fig. 68 Rear window wiper blade

Taking off the wiper blade

– Lift the rear window wiper arm away from the glass moving the blade slightly in the direction of the arm – arrow (A) ⇒ Fig. 68.

– Hold the top of the rear window wiper arm with one hand.

– Unlock the catch (1) with the other hand and remove the blade in the direction of arrow (B).

Fitting the wiper blade

– Slide the blade fully until it clicks into position.

– Check that the wiper is correctly secured.

– Fold the rear window wiper arm back down onto the glass. ■

Rear vision mirrors

Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment

Basic settings

– Push the lever at the bottom of the mirror away from you.

Rear vision mirror anti-dazzle setting

– Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you. ■

Exterior mirrors

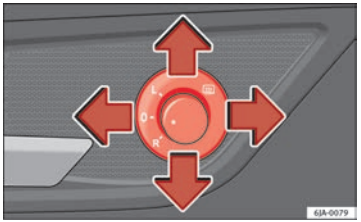

Fig. 69 Door interior: adjuster knob

Before beginning any journey, adjust the rear vision mirrors for correct rear visibility.

Heated rear vision mirrors

– Turn the knob to position ⇒ Fig. 69.

Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror

– Turn the knob to position L ⇒ Fig. 69. The mirror movements are the same as those of the knob.

Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror

– Turn the knob to position R ⇒ Fig. 69. The mirror movements are the same as those of the knob.

WARNING

- **Convex (wide-angle) rear vision mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects appear smaller and further away than they really are. For this reason, you should not rely on these rear vision mirrors for judging the distance of vehicle behind.**
- **If possible, use the interior rear vision mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you.**

Note

- Exterior mirrors are only heated when the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exterior mirrors when the heating system is running.
- If the electrical adjustment should ever fail to operate, the rear vision mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing the edge of the mirror glass.
- Visit the technical service in the event of a fault in the electrical rear vision mirror adjustment system. ■

Seats and storage

Front seats

Introduction

Set the driver seat in such a way that the pedals can be fully depressed with your legs slightly bent.

Set the driver seat backrest in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms slightly bent.

The correct seat position is very important for:

- Reaching all of the controls safely and quickly
- A relaxed low-fatigue posture
- **maximum protection from the seat belts and airbag system**

WARNING

- **Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident!**
- **Be careful when adjusting the front seats! Careless and uncontrolled adjustment can cause injuries.**
- **The backrests must not be reclined too far back while driving. This could limit the effect of the seat belts and the airbag system. Risk of injury!**
- **Never transport more that the permitted amount of people in your vehicle.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Every occupant in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system ⇒ page 45, Child safety.**
- **The front seats, head restraints and seat belts must always be adjusted to the size of the vehicle occupant to provide you and your passengers with the greatest possible protection.**
- **Your feet should remain in the footwell while the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, on the window or on the seat! This also applies to passengers. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position!**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel and dash panel. Failure to respect the minimum distance means that the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury if triggered!**
- **No items must not be kept in the footwell, as they could block the pedals in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or change of direction. You would no longer be able to brake, change gear or accelerate.**
- **Do not place any items on the front passenger seat other than those allowed (e.g. child seat). Risk of accident!**

Note

After a certain time, the backrest angle adjustment mechanism may gain a certain amount of play.

Adjusting the front seats

Fig. 70 Seat adjustment controls/Adjustment controls for a sports seat

Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

– Lift the lever (1) ⇒ Fig. 70 (the central part) and move the seat forwards or backwards.

– Then release the lever (1) and move the seat further until the catch engages.

Adjusting seat height

– To raise, pump the lever (2) ⇒ Fig. 70 (several times if required) upwards to the required seat position.

– To lower, pump the lever (2) (several times if required) downwards to the required seat position.

Adjusting the backrest angle

– Take your weight off the backrest and pull the lever (3) ⇒ Fig. 70 backwards, pressing on the backrest to the required angle.

– When the lever (3) is released, the backrest will remain in the set position. ■

Armrest on front seats with inner storage

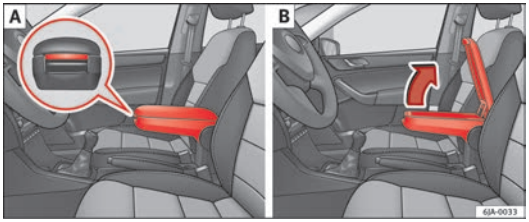

Fig. 71 Armrest/Opening and closing the storage compartment

Adjusting armrest height

– Lift the armrest as far as it will go and then fold it downwards.

– Raise the armrest until it engages in one of the 5 positions.

Opening storage compartment

– Press the button located on the front of the armrest ⇒ Fig. 71 - [A].

– Lift the storage compartment lid ⇒ Fig. 71 - [B]. ■

Heated front seats

Fig. 72 Heated front seats

The cushion and backrest of the front seats can be heated electrically.

Press the or ⇒ Fig. 72 button to switch on and adjust the heated front seats.

Press once to connect the heating at maximum force.

Press the button again to reduce the force of the heating and switch it off. The force is indicated by the number of warning lamps lit on the button.

WARNING

Do not use the heated seat if your perception of pain and/or temperature or that of your passenger is limited, e.g. due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes). It could cause burns on the back, buttocks and legs that are difficult to heal. If you still want to use the heated seat, take frequent breaks on long journeys so that the body can recover from the trip. Ask you doctor about your particular situation.

CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the heating elements, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion or backrest.
- Do not use the heated seats if nobody is sitting on them or if there are items attached to or lying on them, such as a child seat or a bag, etc. This could lead to a fault in the seat heating elements.
- Do not clean the seats with liquid ⇒ page 169.

Note

- Only connect the heated seats when the engine is running. This provides considerable savings on the battery capacity.
- In the event of a drop in voltage in the onboard systems, the heated seats switch off automatically to ensure enough power to control the engine ⇒ page 186, Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment. ■

Head restraints

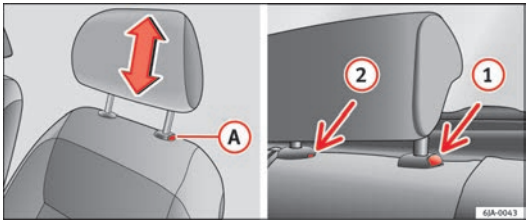

Fig. 73 Head restraints: adjusting/removing head restraints ▶

Head restraints cannot be moved up or down or removed on sports seats.

Adjusting height

– Take hold of the sides of the head restraint and pull upwards.

– To lower the hear restraint, press button (A) ⇒ Fig. 73 while pushing the head restraint downwards.

Fitting and removing head restraints on front seats

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press catch (A) ⇒ Fig. 73 and remove the head restraint.

– To refit, insert the head restraint into the holes in the backrest, pushing it down until it engages.

Fitting and removing head restraints on rear seats

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press catch (1) ⇒ Fig. 73 while pressing on the catch in hole (2) with a max. 5 mm flat-headed screwdriver and remove the head restraint.

– To refit, insert the head restraint into the holes in the backrest, pushing it down until it engages.

For maximum head restraint protection, adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head.

The head restraint must be adjusted in line with the height of users. Correct adjustment of the head restraint, together with the seat belts, ensure effective passenger protection ⇒ page 10.

WARNING

- **Badly adjusted head restraints increase the risk of injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **Never drive with the head restraints removed. Risk of injuries!**
- **If the seats are in use, never drive with the rear head restraints in their out-of-use position.**

Rear seats

Folding the rear backrest

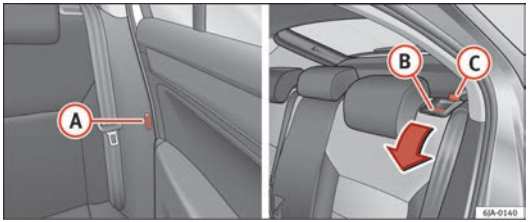

Fig. 74 Unlocking the backrest

Folding

– Before folding the rear seats, adjust the position of the front seats so that they cannot be damaged by the rear seats[1].

– Insert the seat belt latch plate into hole (A) ⇒ Fig. 74 located on the corresponding side of the vehicle – safety position.

– Press the lock button (B) to unlock the backrest and fold it forwards.

Returning to the initial position

– Where the head restraint has been removed, insert it into the backrest when partially raised.

– Push the backrest backwards to its original position until the lock button engages – check that it is locked by pulling on the backrest ⇒ ⓘ.

– Make sure the red protruding part (C) is not visible.

WARNING

- **Once the backrests have been lifted, the seat belts and their buckles must be in their initial position – ready for use.**
- **The backrests must be safely locked to ensure any items in the luggage compartment cannot move around the interior of the vehicle in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre. Risk of injuries!**
- **Make sure the rear backrests are correctly locked. Only then will the three-point automatic seat belt on the rear central seat work correctly.**

[1] When the front seats are adjusted to the rear position, their head restraints should be removed before folding the backrests on the rear seats. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they cannot be soiled or damaged.

CAUTION

Take care when handling the rear backrests so as not to damage the seat belts. The seat belt must never be left behind the lifted backrest. ■

Armrest on rear seats

Fig. 75 Rear seats: armrest

The armrest can be folded away for greater comfort using the handle ⇒ Fig. 75. ■

Luggage compartment

Introduction

Please observe the following points to ensure the vehicle handles well at all times:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.

– Secure luggage using the fastening rings or retaining net ⇒ page 113.

During an accident, even small and light objects can have so much kinetic energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. However, the speed of the vehicle is the most important factor.

Example: An unsecured object weighing 4.5 kg produces energy corresponding to 20 times its weight in a frontal collision at 50 km/h (31 mph). This means that its weight “reaches” around 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries that might be sustained if this “projectile” strikes an occupant as it flies through the vehicle interior.

WARNING

- **Store objects in the luggage compartment and secure to the fastening points.**
- **In an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects in the interior can be flung forwards and possibly injure vehicle occupants or others. This risk is increased if the flying objects hit and trigger an airbag. In this case, any rebounding objects could injure vehicle occupants. Risk of fatal injuries!**
- **Take into account that transporting heavy objects changes the centre of gravity that could also cause changes in vehicle handling. Risk of accident! Therefore, always adjust your speed and driving style to suit these circumstances.**
- **Securing the load to the rings using unsuitable or damage straps could lead to injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre. Secure suitable straps safely to the rings to ensure this does not happen.**
- **Position the load so that it cannot moved forwards during a sudden braking manoeuvre. Risk of injuries!**
- **If transporting sharp or dangerous objects in the space provided when the rear seats are folded, ensure the safety of the occupant of the remaining rear seat ⇒ page 13.**
- **If the rear seat located alongside a folding seat is occupied, ensure safety by placing the load so that it stops the seat from folding backwards in the event of a collision, for example.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, as exhaust gases can be drawn into the interior. Risk of intoxication!**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. Risk of accident!**
- **Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment!**

CAUTION

Make sure sharp objects stored in the luggage compartment cannot not damage the rear window heating filaments.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adapted to suit the load ⇒ page 188, Tyre useful life. ■

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on automatically when the rear lid is opened. The light switches off automatically 10 seconds after the rear lid has been opened. ■

Category N1 vehicles

Category N1 vehicles with no protection grille must use a retaining set compliant with Standard EN 12195 (1 – 4) to secure the load. ■

Retaining elements

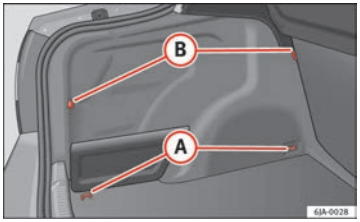

Fig. 76 Luggage compartment: Retaining elements

The following retaining elements are fitted in the luggage compartment ⇒ Fig. 76.

(A) Rings to secure the load and the retaining nets.
(B) Rings used solely for the retaining nets.

CAUTION

The rings support a maximum load of 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Note

The front ring (B) is below the folding backrest of the rear seats ⇒ Fig. 76. ■

Hook

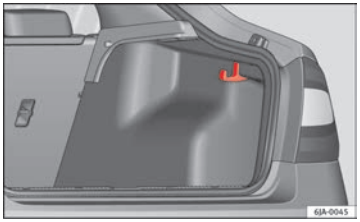

Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: hook

There are hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment to secure light items of luggage such as bags, etc. ⇒ Fig. 77.

CAUTION

The side hooks support a maximum load of 7.5 kg. ■

Retaining nets

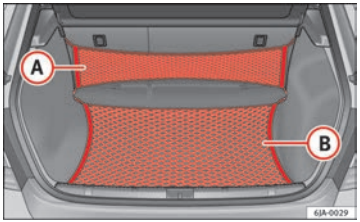

Fig. 78 Retaining nets

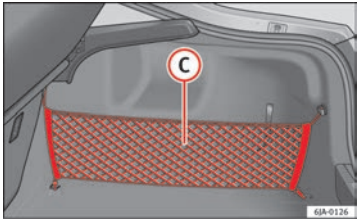

Fig. 79 Retaining nets

Example of securing retaining nets ⇒ Fig. 78 and ⇒ Fig. 79.

(A) Sideways bag
(B) Ground net
(C) Lengthways bag

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum load that the nets can support. Heavy objects cannot be safely secured. Risk of injuries!

CAUTION

- The retaining nets support a maximum load of 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any item with sharp edges in the net. Risk of damaging the net! ■

Rear shelf

Fig. 80 Removing the shelf

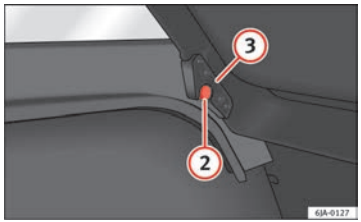

Fig. 81 Removing the shelf

The shelf can be removed if a large load is to be transported.

Removing the shelf

– Remove the straps from the shelf (1) ⇒ Fig. 80.

– Remove the shelf from its housing (2) by knocking it gently from underneath between the supports.

Fitting the shelf

– Place the shelf on the side supports on the trim.

– Adjust the shelf supports (3) ⇒ Fig. 81 to fit the supports (2) in the trim.

– Fit into place by knocking the top of the shelf gently between the supports.

– Attach the straps (1) to the tray.

WARNING

Do not place objects on the rear shelf that could endanger the vehicle occupants in case of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident.

CAUTION

- The rear shelf supports a maximum load of 1 kg.
- If handled incorrectly, the tray could bend on closing the rear lid and become damaged or damage the trim. Follow the instructions below.
  – The shelf supports (3) ⇒ Fig. 81 must be securely in place in the trim supports (2).
  – The size of the load must not exceed the height of the shelf.
  – When open, the shelf must not be bent against the shelf seal.
  – There must be no objects in the space between the open shelf and the backrest of the rear seat.

Note

The shelf will lift when the rear lid is opened. ■

Roof carrier*

Introduction

WARNING

- **The load on the roof carrier must be properly secured. Risk of accident!**
- **Always secure the load using retaining straps in good condition.**
- **Distribute the load evenly.**
- **When transporting heavy or large objects on the roof, any change in the normal vehicle behaviour due to a change in the centre of gravity or an increased wind resistance must be taken into account. Risk of accident! For this reason, a suitable speed and driving style must be used.**
- **Avoid sudden manoeuvres and braking.**
- **Adjust your driving style to suit visibility, the weather and road and traffic conditions.**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. Risk of accident!**

CAUTION

- Only use SEAT-authorised roof carriers.
- Where roof carriers from other systems are used or where they are not fitted properly, any damage caused to the vehicle will not be covered by the warranty. Therefore, carefully follow the Instruction Manual for installation of the roof carrier.
- On vehicles fitted with a sliding sunroof, make sure it does not hit the load on the roof when opened
- Remember that the rear lid must not hit the roof load.
- The total height of the vehicle increases according to the roof load. Compare the height of the vehicle with the heights of bridges or, for example, the size of the garage door.
- Do not forget to remove the roof carrier before entering an automatic carwash.
- Take into account that the load must not damage the aerial located on the roof.

For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more fuel. ■

Attachment points

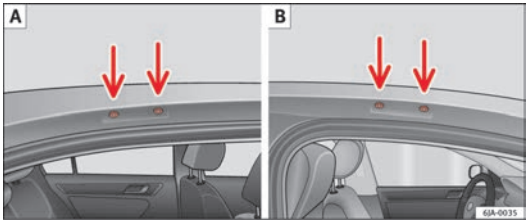

Fig. 82 Basic roof carrier attachment points

Location of the basic roof carrier attachment points ⇒ Fig. 82.

Ⓐ rear attachment points
Ⓑ front attachment points

Install and remove following the instructions given.

CAUTION

Follow the instructions given in the manual. ■

Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load (including the support system) of **75 kg** and the total authorised weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded.

It will not be possible to carry the full maximum load if the roof carrier you are using is rated for a load which is less than this figure. In this case, you can only load the roof carrier to the maximum load permitted in your installation manual. ■

Drink holder

Introduction

WARNING

- **Do not put hot drinks in the drink holders. They could spill while the vehicle is moving. Risk of scalding!**
- **Do not use cups or glasses made of fragile materials (e.g. glass or china). These could cause injury in the event of an accident.**

CAUTION

Avoid putting open drinks containers in the drink holder while the vehicle is moving. They could spill (e.g. on braking) and cause damage to the electrical equipment or the seat covers. ■

Drink holder in centre console

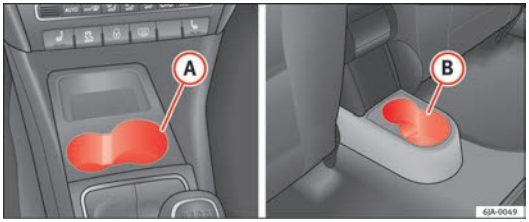

Fig. 83 Centre console: drink holder

(A) Front drink holder in the centre console
(B) Rear drink holder in the centre console ■

Drink holder in the rear armrest

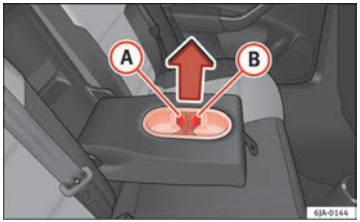

Fig. 84 Rear seats armrest: drink holder

Two drinks can be placed in the drink holder. ▶

Use the detachable parts (A) and (B) ⇒ Fig. 84 to change the size of the holes.

– Remove part (A) or (B) in the direction indicated by the arrow and replace in the required position in the drink holder. ■

Ashtrays

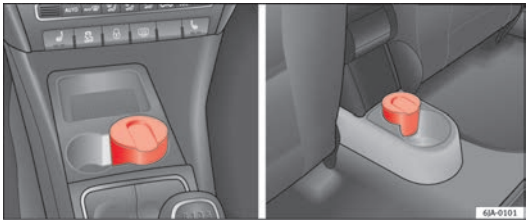

Fig. 85 Centre console: front ashtray/rear ashtray

Removing the ashtray

– Pull the ashtray ⇒ Fig. 85 upwards to remove.

Inserting the ashtray

– Push the ashtray down.

WARNING

Never put flammable materials in the ashtray. Risk of fire!

CAUTION

Never hold onto the ashtray by the lid when removing it. Risk of breaking the lid. ■

Cigarette lighter, 12V power socket

Cigarette lighter

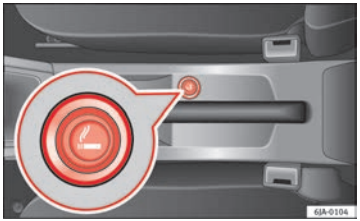

Fig. 86 Centre console: cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter is located at the front of the centre console ⇒ Fig. 86.

Using the cigarette lighter

– Press the cigarette lighter knob ⇒ Fig. 86.

– Wait for the lighter to spring out.

– Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil immediately.

– Put the cigarette lighter back in its socket. ▶

WARNING

- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns and serious injuries.**
- **The cigarette lighter also works when the ignition is off and when the ignition key is removed. Therefore, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.**

Note

- The 12 volt power socket of the cigarette lighter can also be used as a power source for electrical appliances ⇒ page 119, 12 V power socket.
- Additional information ⇒ page 195, Accessories, modifications and spare parts.

12 V power socket

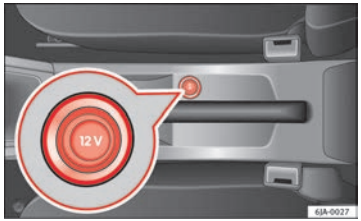

Fig. 87 Centre console: 12V power socket

The 12 V power socket is located at the front of the centre console ⇒ Fig. 87.

Using the power socket

– Open the cover or remove the cigarette lighter concealing the socket.

– Insert the plug of the electrical appliance into the socket.

Additional information ⇒ page 195, Accessories, modifications and spare parts.

WARNING

- **Improper use of the sockets or electrical appliances can cause a fire and lead to burns and other serious injuries.**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. The 12 volt power socket is also operate when the is ignition switched off and the key removed.**
- **Should the connected appliance overheat, immediately switch it off and disconnect it from the socket.**

CAUTION

- The 12V power socket can only be used to power appliances with a power rating of up to 120 Watt.
- Never exceed the maximum permitted power, as this could cause damage to the vehicle electrical installation.
- When the engine is switched off, however, the vehicle battery will be drained. Risk of flat battery!
- Only use suitable plugs so as not to damage the power socket.
- Only use appliances that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in compliance with current regulations.
- Before switching the ignition on or off, unplug the appliances from the power socket to protect them from any damage caused by fluctuations in voltage.
- Follow the instructions for use of connected appliances!

Storage compartment

Summary

The following storage areas are available in the vehicle:

Passenger side glove compartment	⇒ page 120
Compartment for reflective vest	⇒ page 121
Storage compartments in front seats	⇒ page 121
Net pockets on back of front backrests	⇒ page 122
Storage compartment for (sun)glasses	⇒ page 122
Storage compartments in centre console	⇒ page 123
Multimedia compartment	⇒ page 123
Storage compartments in doors	⇒ page 123
Storage compartment in luggage compartment	⇒ page 124

WARNING

- **Never place any objects on the instrument panel. These objects could be flown around the interior while the vehicle is moving (on accelerating or turning) and distract you. Risk of accident!**
- **Make sure objects remain in the centre console or other compartments while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, this would prevent you from braking, changing gear or accelerating. Risk of accident!**

Passenger side glove compartment

Fig. 88 Instrument panel: passenger side glove compartment

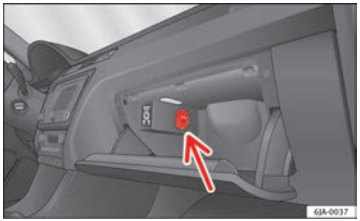

Fig. 89 Storage: cooling control

Opening and closing passenger side glove compartment

– Pull the catch on the lid in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 88 and open the lid.

– Close the lid and push it until it engages.

Storage compartment lighting

– The light will come on automatically when the glove compartment is opened.

– The light will go out when the glove compartment is closed.

Glove compartment cooling*

Open or close the air outlet by turning the thumbwheel ⇒ Fig. 89.

If the air outlet is open and the air conditioning is on, the cooled air will be released into the glove compartment.

If the air outlet is open and the air conditioning is off, outdoor air (not conditioned) will be released into the glove compartment.

The air outlet should be closed if the air conditioning is being used in heating mode or where glove compartment cooling is not in use.

WARNING

For safety reasons, all storage compartments must be closed while the vehicle is moving.

Note

A maximum 1 litre bottle can be stored in the glove compartment. ■

Compartment for reflective vest

Fig. 90 Driver seat: storage

There is a compartment below the driver seat ⇒ Fig. 90 to store the reflective vests.

WARNING

The compartment is solely designed to store the reflective vest and no other objects. Objects falling out of the storage compartment could limit or prevent use of the pedals.

CAUTION

The compartment is solely designed to store the reflective vest and no other objects. Risk of damage to the storage compartment. ■

Storage compartments in front seats

There is a storage pocket on the rear part of the backrest of the front seats.

These pockets are designed to hold maps, magazines, etc. ▶

WARNING

Do not place heavy objects in the pockets. Risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place overly large objects in the pockets (e.g. bottles) or objects with sharp edges. Risk of damage to the pockets and the upholstery.

Net pockets on back of front backrests

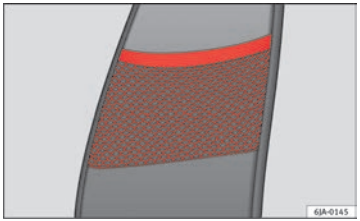

Fig. 91 Front seats backrests: net pockets

There are net pockets on the inside part of the front seats backrests ⇒ Fig. 91.

These pockets are designed to hold lightweight objects such as a mobile phone or an mp3 player.

WARNING

- **Do not exceed the maximum load that the net pockets can support. Heavy objects cannot be safely secured. Risk of injuries!**

CAUTION

- The net pockets support a maximum load of 150 g.
- Do not place overly large objects in the pockets (e.g. bottles) or objects with sharp edges. Risk of damage to the pockets.

Storage compartment for (sun)glasses

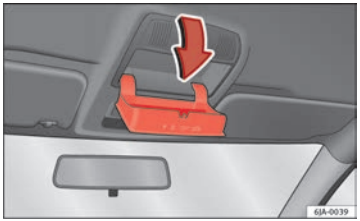

Fig. 92 Close-up of roof panel: storage compartment for (sun)glasses

– Press the compartment lid and it will drop down ⇒ Fig. 92.

WARNING

This compartment must only remain open when removing or replacing (sun)glasses.

CAUTION

- Do not place heat-sensitive objects in the compartment as they could be damaged.
- The side compartment supports a maximum load of 0.25 kg.

Storage compartments in centre console

Fig. 93 Centre console: storage

Open storage compartment in centre console ⇒ Fig. 93.

Multimedia compartment

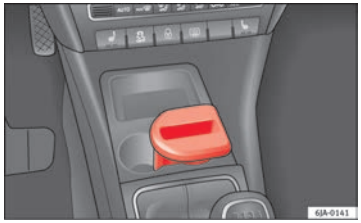

Fig. 94 Front centre console: multimedia compartment

The multimedia compartment is in the storage compartment of the front centre console ⇒ Fig. 94.

The compartment can be used to hold mobile phones, mp3 players or similar devices.

WARNING

Never use the multimedia compartment as an ashtray or to store flammable materials. Risk of fire!

Storage compartment in front door

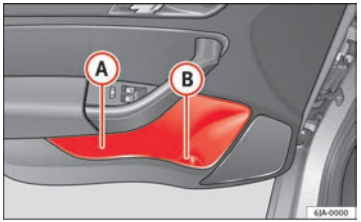

Fig. 95 Storage compartment in door trim

There is a bottle carrier in part (B) ⇒ Fig. 95 of the storage compartment in the front door.

WARNING

Only use part (A) ⇒ Fig. 95 of the compartment in the front door to store objects that do not protrude from it so as not the limit the deployment area of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in luggage compartment

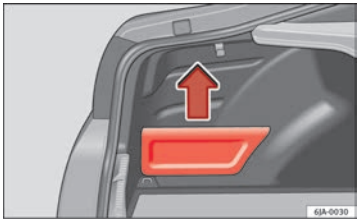

Fig. 96 Luggage compartment: storage

The lid from the side storage compartment can be removed to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

– Hold onto the top of the lid and pull it out in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 96.

CAUTION

- The compartments are designed to hold small objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg.
- Make sure you do not damage the storage compartment or the luggage compartment trim when using the compartment. ■

Coat hooks*

The coat hooks are located on the B-pillars and on the handles on the interior lining above each rear door.

WARNING

- **Make sure that any items of clothing hanging from the coat hooks do not obstruct your view to the rear.**
- **Only use the coat hooks for light items of clothing and make sure that there are no heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.**
- **Do not use clothes hangers to hang up the clothing, as this could interfere with the function of the head-protection airbags.**

CAUTION

The side hooks support a maximum load of 2 kg. ■

Heating and air conditioning

Heating and air conditioning

General notes

The power of the heating depends on the temperature of the coolant. Therefore, maximum power is only obtained when the engine has reached operating temperature.

The temperature and the humidity of the air is reduced when the system cools the interior of the vehicle. This therefore increases the comfort of all vehicle occupants when outside temperatures and humidity are high. It also helps prevent the windows from misting over during cold periods of the year.

The air recirculation system can be switched on temporarily to increase the cooling effect.

Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of ice, snow or leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling.

When the air conditioning is on, **condensation** can drip from the evaporator in the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

WARNING

- **All windows must be clear of ice, snow and condensation for driving safety. Therefore, make sure you familiarise yourself with the correct use of heating and ventilation, window demisting and defrosting and cooling.**
- **Never use the air recirculation system for too long, as it prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle and "used" air can cause tiredness, reduce your attention span and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident. Switch off the air recirculation system as soon as the windows begin to mist over.**

Note

- Used air escapes through ventilation slots in the rear of the luggage compartment.
- Smoking is not recommended while the air recirculation system is in use, as the smoke drawn from the interior of the vehicle settles in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This causes a persistent, unpleasant smell while the system is running that is time-consuming and expensive (evaporator replacement) to eliminate.
- Never cover the air outlets to ensure the system operates correctly. ■

Economic use of the air conditioning system

When the air conditioning is switched on, the compressor consumes engine power and has an impact on fuel consumption.

If the vehicle interior has heated up after standing in the sun for some time, the air inside can be cooled by opening the windows or doors to allow the hot air to escape. ▶

While in motion, the air conditioning should not be switched on if the windows are open.

If the interior temperature can be reached without switching on the air conditioning, the fresh air mode should be used.

For the sake of the environment

This saves on fuel and reduces emissions. ■

Faults

If the air conditioning does not work at outside temperatures above +5 °C (+41 °F) then the system is faulty. This may be due to one of the following reasons:

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary ⇒ page 210.
- The air conditioning compressor has switched off temporarily because of an increased engine coolant temperature ⇒ page 56.

If you cannot repair the fault yourself or where the cooling power continues to drop, switch the system off. Contact a specialised service. ■

Air vents

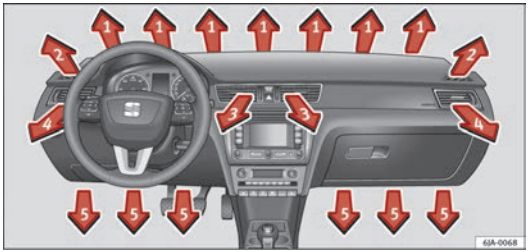

Fig. 97 Air vents

Opening air vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical circular control upwards.

Closing air vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical circular control downwards.

Changing the direction of air delivery from air vents 3 and 4

– The air circulation height can be varied by changing the position of the sliding adjuster upwards or downwards ⇒ Fig. 97.

– The air circulation direction can be varied by changing the position of the sliding adjuster to the right or to the left.

The flow of air from the vents is controlled using control Ⓒ ⇒ Fig. 98. Vents **3** ⇒ Fig. 97 and **4** can be opened and closed individually.

Depending on the position of the adjusters and on the weather, open vents can provide air which is either heated, unheated or cooled. ■

Heating

Operation

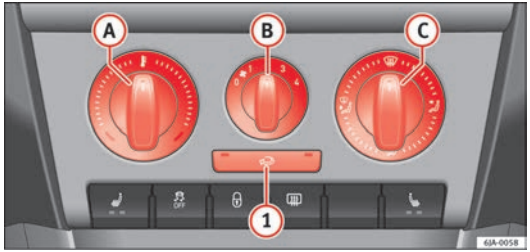

Fig. 98 Heating: controls

Temperature selection

– Turn rotary control (A) ⇒ Fig. 98 clockwise to increase the temperature.

– Turn rotary control (A) anti-clockwise to reduce the temperature.

Blower selection

– Turn rotary control (B) ⇒ Fig. 98 to position 1 to 4 to switch the blower on.

– Turn rotary control (B) to position 0 to switch the blower off.

– Press button (1) ⇒ ⚠ in Air recirculation on page 129 to close the fresh air vent.

Air distribution selection

– Turn rotary control (C) ⇒ Fig. 98 to select the air vents ⇒ page 126, Air vents you wish to activate.

All controls, except control (B) ⇒ Fig. 98, can be set to any intermediate position.

Leave the blower activated at all times to prevent the windows from misting over.

Note

If the system is set so that all of the air is used to defrost the windows, no air is supplied to the footwell area. This could limit heating comfort. ■

Heating selection

Recommended settings for the different modes:

Settings	Control position			button (1)	Air vents 4
	(A)	(B)	(C)		
Windscreen and side window defrost	Clockwise as far as it will go	3		Do not switch on	Open and direct towards the side window
Windscreen and side window defrost	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Open and direct towards the side window
Heat as quickly as possible	Clockwise as far as it will go	3		Switch on briefly	Open
Mild heating	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Open
Fresh air mode - blower	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Required position		Do not switch on	Open

Note

- Controls (A) ⇒ Fig. 98 ⇒ page 127, (B), (C) and button (1).
- Air vents **4** ⇒ page 126.
- We recommend you leave the air vents **3** ⇒ page 126 in the open position. ■

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

Switching on air recirculation mode

– Press button (1) ⇒ Fig. 98 ⇒ page 127 and the lamp in the button will light up.

Switching off air recirculation mode

– Press button (1) ⇒ Fig. 98 ⇒ page 127 again and the lamp in the button will switch off.

If air vent (C) ⇒ Fig. 98 ⇒ page 127 is in position , air recirculation mode switches off automatically. Press the button to switch air recirculation mode back on in this position. ▶

WARNING

Never use the air recirculation system for too long, as it prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle and "used" air can cause tiredness, reduce your attention span and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident. Switch off the air recirculation system as soon as the windows begin to mist over.

Air conditioning (manual)*

General notes

The air cooling system only works if the AC button (2) ⇒ Fig. 99 ⇒ page 129 is pressed and under following conditions:

- The engine is running
- The outside temperature is above +2 °C (+36 °F)
- The blower control is in position 1 – 4

When the cooling system is on and under certain conditions, air can be blown from the vents at a temperature of approx. 5 °C (41 °F). In the event of prolonged, irregular distribution of the air flow from the outlets and significant differences in temperature, e.g. on leaving the vehicle, sensitive people may catch a cold.

Note

A visit to the specialised service once a year is recommended to clean the air conditioning system.

Operation

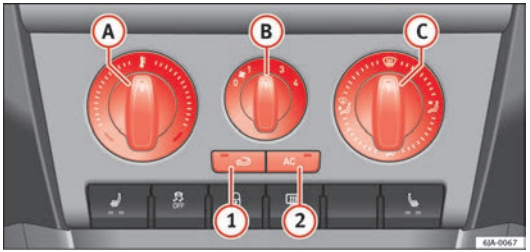

Fig. 99 Air conditioning: controls

Temperature selection

– Turn rotary control (A) ⇒ Fig. 99 clockwise to increase the temperature.

– Turn rotary control (A) anti-clockwise to reduce the temperature.

Blower selection

– Turn rotary control (B) ⇒ Fig. 99 to position 1 to 4 to switch the blower on.

– Turn rotary control (B) to position 0 to switch the blower off.

– Press button (1) ⇒ page 131, Air recirculation to close the fresh air vent.

Air distribution selection

– Turn rotary control (C) ⇒ Fig. 99 to select the air vents ⇒ page 126 you wish to activate.

Switching cooling on and off

– Press the AC button (2) ⇒ Fig. 99 and the lamp in the button will light up.

– Press the AC button (2) again and the LED in the button will switch off.

Note

- If the air distribution is directed towards the windows, all, of the heating power is used to defrost the windscreen. No warm air is directed to the footwell area. This could limit heating comfort.
- The AC button lamp lights up after the system has been switched on, even if not all of the conditions for cooling system operations are met. Cooling is indicated as available once all of the conditions are met ⇒ page 129, General notes.

Air conditioning selection

Basic air conditioning control settings recommended for the corresponding operating modes:

Settings	Control position			Button		Air vents 4
	(A)	(B)	(C)	(1)	(2)	
Windscreen and side window defrost[a)]	Required temperature	3 or 4		Do not switch on	Switched on automatically[b)]	Open and direct towards the side window
Heat as quickly as possible	Clockwise as far as it will go	3		Switch on briefly	Off	Open
Mild heating	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Off	Open
Heat as quickly as possible	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Switch on briefly[c)]	On	Open
Optimum cooling	Required temperature	1 or 2, respectively. 3		Do not switch on	On	Open and direct towards the roof
Fresh air mode - blower	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Required position		Do not switch on	Off	Open

a) This type of setting is not recommended in countries with high air humidity. The windows could cool too quickly and cause them to mist over on the outside.

b) The lamp in button (2) lights up, even if not all of the conditions for cooling system operations are met. Cooling is indicated as available once all of the conditions are met ⇒ page 129, General notes.

c) In certain conditions, air recirculation mode can switch on automatically ⇒ page 131, a lamp lights up in the button.

Note

- Controls (A) ⇒ Fig. 99 ⇒ page 129, (B), (C) and buttons (1) and (2).
- Air vents **4** ⇒ page 126.
- We recommend you leave the air vents **3** ⇒ page 126 in the open position.

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

Switching on air recirculation mode

– Press button (1) ⇒ Fig. 99 ⇒ page 129 and the lamp in the button will light up.

Switching off air recirculation mode

– Press button (1) ⇒ Fig. 99 ⇒ page 129 again and the lamp in the button will switch off.

If air distribution control (C) ⇒ Fig. 99 ⇒ page 129 is in position, air recirculation mode switches off automatically Press the button to switch air recirculation mode back on in this position.

WARNING

Never use the air recirculation system for too long, as it prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle and "used" air can cause tiredness, reduce your attention span and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident. Switch off the air recirculation system as soon as the windows begin to mist over.

Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning)

General notes

Climatronic automatically maintains a comfortable temperature. To do so, it automatically regulates the supplied air temperature and the blower and air distribution levels. The system also allows for the effect of sunlight, so there is no need for manual adjustment. **Automatic operations** ⇒ page 133 guarantee maximum comfort any time of year.

Climatronic description

Cooling only works if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running
- The outside temperature is above +2 °C (+36 °F)
- AC (18) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 on.

In order to ensure engines subject to heavy loads are cooled, the air conditioning compressor is switched off in the event of high coolant temperatures.

Recommended setting for all seasons

- Set the required temperature. We recommend 22 °C (72 °F).
- Press the AUTO button (12) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133.
- Adjust vents **3** ⇒ page 126 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Change between degrees Centigrade and degrees Fahrenheit

Keep the AUTO and AC buttons ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 pressed down at the same time. The data is displayed on the screen in the units required.

Note

A visit to the specialised service once a year is recommended to clean the Climatronic system.

Controls

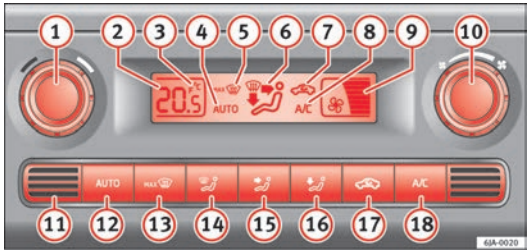

Fig. 100 Climatronic: controls

Buttons/controls

(1) Interior temperature setting

Display

(2) Selected interior temperature
(3) Degrees Centigrade or Fahrenheit
(4) Automatic air conditioning mode
(5) Defrost or demist windscreen
(6) Air flow direction
(7) Air recirculation
(8) Cooling on/off
(9) Selected blower speed

Buttons/controls

(10) Set blower speed
(11) Interior temperature sensor
(12) Automatic mode
(13) Defrost or demist windscreen
(14) Air distribution to windows
(15) Air distribution to upper body
(16) Air distribution to footwells
(17) Air recirculation
(18) Cooling on/off

Note

The interior temperature sensor (11) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 is at the bottom. Do not cover it with stickers or the like, as this could have a negative effect on Climatronic operations. ■

Automatic mode

Automatic mode is used to maintain a constant temperature and demist the windows inside the vehicle.

Switching on automatic mode

– Set the temperature to between +18 °C (+64 °F) and +29 °C (+84 °F).

– Adjust vents **3** ⇒ page 126 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

– Press the AUTO button (12) ⇒ Fig. 100 and **AUTO** displayed on the screen.

Automatic mode is switched off by pressing the air distribution buttons or increasing or decreasing the blower speed. However, the temperature remains regulated. ■

Temperature selection

– When you switch on the ignition, control (1) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 can be used to set the required interior temperature.

The interior temperature can be set to between +18 °C (+64 °F) and +29 °C (+84 °F). The temperature is regulated automatically within this range. If a temperature below +18 °C (+64 °F) is selected, "LO" is displayed on the screen. If a temperature above +29 °C (+84 °F) is selected, "HI" is displayed on the screen. At both extremes, Climatronic works at maximum cooling or heating power, respectively. The temperature is not regulated.

In the event of prolonged, irregular distribution of the air flow from the outlets (particularly the footwells) and significant differences in temperature, e.g. on leaving the vehicle, sensitive people may catch a cold. ■

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

Switching on air recirculation mode

– Press button (17) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 and the symbol is displayed on the screen.

Switching off air recirculation mode

– Press button (17) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 and the symbol disappears from the screen.

WARNING

Never use the air recirculation system for too long, as it prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle and "used" air can cause tiredness, reduce your attention span and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident. Switch off the air recirculation system as soon as the windows begin to mist over.

Note

If air recirculation mode remains on for 15 minutes, the symbol will start to flash on the screen to indicate prolonged air recirculation. If air recirculation is not switched off, the symbol will continue to flash for 5 minutes. ■

Blower selection

Climatronic automatically regulates the blower speed according to the interior temperature. It is possible, however, to set the blower speed to suit requirements.

– Turn rotary control (10) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 anti-clockwise (decrease speed) or clockwise (increase speed).

Climatronic will switch off when the blower switches off.

WARNING

- **"Used air" can cause tiredness, reduce attention spans and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident.**
- **Do not switch off Climatronic for longer than necessary.**
- **Switch Climatronic back on as soon as the windows begin to mist over.** ■

Windscreen defrosting

Switching on windscreen defrosting

– Press button MAX (13) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133.

Switching off windscreen defrosting

– Press button MAX (13) ⇒ Fig. 100 ⇒ page 133 several times or press the AUTO button.

The temperature is regulated automatically. The air output is increased from vents **1** ⇒ page 126 and **2**. ■

Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

WARNING

- **Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving!**
- **Maintain at least 25 cm distance between the steering wheel and the upper part of your body (1) ⇒ Fig. 101 [B] ⇒ page 137. The airbag system will not be able to give the required protection if the minimum distance is not observed. This can cause a risk of fatal injury!**
- **For safety reasons, the steering wheel adjustment lever must always be pushed securely against the steering column to prevent the steering wheel from accidentally changing position while driving. Risk of accident!**
- **If the steering wheel is adjusted closer to your face, the protective effect of the driver airbag will be decreased in the event of an accident. Check that the steering wheel is pointing towards the upper part of your body.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside part at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **When moving with the engine switched off, the ignition key must always remain in position (2) ⇒ Fig. 102 ⇒ page 138 (ignition on). The control lamps will light up in this position. Otherwise, the steering lock could engage suddenly. Risk of accident!**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Do not remove the key from the ignition until the vehicle has come to a standstill and is secure (e.g. the handbrake is engaged). Otherwise, the steering lock could suddenly engage. Risk of accident!**
- **Always take the ignition key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if you leave children in the vehicle. Children could start the engine, for example, with the subsequent risk of accident.**
- **Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents! Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness and can cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never switch the engine off until the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident!**

CAUTION

- Turning the steering wheel fully in either direction when the vehicle is stationary and the engine in gear puts the power steering under great stress. This could lead to noise. Never leave the steering wheel turned fully in either direction for more than 15 seconds. Risk of damage to the power steering system!
- The starter motor may only be used (key position (3) ⇒ Fig. 102 ⇒ page 138 in the ignition) if the engine is off. Using the starter motor when the engine is running could cause damage.
- Immediately release the ignition key when the engine starts, otherwise damage could be caused to the starter motor.
- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine before it reaches operating temperature. Risk of engine damage!

- Do not tow-start the engine. Risk of engine damage! In vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel could reach the catalytic converter and catch fire in it. This would lead to a fault in the catalytic converter. Use the battery from another vehicle for help in starting the engine ⇒ page 205, Jump-starting.
- After the engine has been working hard for a long time, leave the engine idling for about one minute before switching it off at the end of a journey. This will stop the engine from overheating.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine when the vehicle is stationary. If possible, move off immediately after starting the engine. This will help the engine reach operating temperature more quickly, reducing the quantity of emissions.

Note

- The engine can only be started with the original SEAT key.
- Loud running noises may be heard briefly after cold-starting the engine. This is normal and is no cause for concern.
- After the engine has been stopped and the ignition switched off, the radiator fan may continue running for around 10 minutes.
- If the engine still does not start after a second attempt, the fuel pump fuse might have blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary ⇒ page 211, Fuses in the dash panel or contact your Specialised Service.
- You should always **engage the steering lock** when you leave the vehicle. This will hinder any attempts at theft. ■

Adjusting the steering wheel position

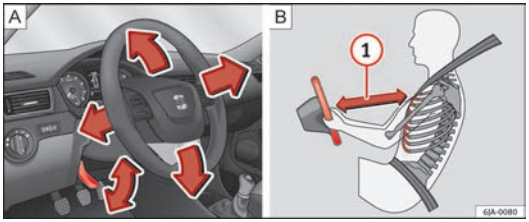

Fig. 101 Adjustable steering wheel: lever beneath steering column/safe distance from steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted vertically and horizontally.

– First adjust the position of the driver seat ⇒ page 107, Front seats.

– Pull down the leave located below the steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 101 A.

– Adjust the steering wheel vertically or horizontally.

– Pull the lever upwards as far as it will go. ■

Power steering

The power steering allows you to turn the steering wheel more easily.

If the power steering fails or the engine is off (towing), it is still possible to turn the vehicle's steering wheel fully. However, you need more strength to steer the vehicle. ■

Start-up lock security system (immobiliser)

There is an electronic chip in the key. The electronic immobiliser is deactivated when the key is inserted into the ignition. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the key is removed from the ignition.

The engine will not start if an unauthorised key is used.

The informative display indicates:

Immobiliser active! ■

Ignition lock

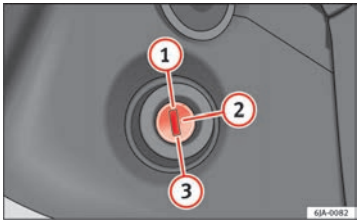

Fig. 102 Ignition key positions

Petrol engines

(1) – Ignition switched off, engine stopped, steering can be locked

(2) – Ignition switched on

(3) – Starting

Diesel engines

(1) – Fuel supply stopped, ignition switched off, engine stopped, steering can be locked

(2) – Engine pre-heating, ignition switched on

(3) – Starting

To engage the **Steering lock** without the key in the ignition, turn the steering wheel slightly until it engages

If the **steering lock is engaged** and it is difficult or impossible to turn the key to position (2), release the lock by turning the steering wheel slightly in both directions. ■

Starting the engine

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. When you switch on the ignition, the glow plug warning lamp ➿ will light up. The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

Do not connect electrical appliances during preheating so as not the drain the vehicle battery unnecessarily.

Starting the engine

- Move the gearbox lever into neutral or move the selector lever to position **P** or **N** and pull firmly on the handbrake.
- Press the clutch pedal all the way down (2) ⇒ Fig. 102 ⇒ page 138 and start the engine (3) – without pressing the accelerator. Keep the clutch pedal pressed down until the engine starts.
- Release the ignition key as soon as the engine starts. The key returns to position (2). ▶

- If the engine does not start after 10 seconds, turn the key back to position (1). Repeat the action after 30 seconds.
- Release the handbrake before moving off.

Switching off the engine

Stop the engine by turning the ignition key to position (1) ⇒ Fig. 102 ⇒ page 138.

Brakes and brake servo systems

Introduction

WARNING

- **The brake servo only works when the engine is running. Braking when the engine is switched off requires more strength on the brake pedal. Risk of accident!**
- **Press down on the clutch pedal when stopping and braking with a manual gearbox, petrol engine vehicle at low speed. Otherwise, the brake servo might not work properly. Risk of accident!**
- **In the event of damage to the standard front spoiler or where a different front spoiler, hubcaps, etc. are subsequently fitted, make sure the air vent to the brakes on the front wheels is not blocked. Otherwise, braking operations may be impaired. Risk of accident!**
- **Always fully release the handbrake. If it is only partially released, this will cause overheating of the rear brakes, which can impair the function of the brake system. Risk of accident!**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. They could release the handbrake or move the gear lever. The vehicle could start moving. Risk of accident!**
- **Insufficient fuel can cause the engine to run irregularly or to switch off. Brake assist systems could be impaired. Risk of accident!**
- **Always adjust your driving style to suit visibility, the weather and road and traffic conditions. The best vehicle safety offered by brake assist systems must never encourage you to run greater risks. Risk of accident!**

CAUTION

- Observe the information concerning new brake pads ⇒ page 154.
- Where braking is not necessary, do not wear down the brake pads by pressing down gently on the brake pedal. This causes the brakes to overheat, increasing their wear and increasing braking distances.
- To ensure the brake assist systems work properly, all wheels must be fitted with tyres approved by the manufacturer.

Note

- If you brake suddenly and the brake system control unit regards the situation as hazardous for the drivers behind you, the brake lights will begin to flash automatically. After reducing speed to approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) or stopping the vehicle, the brake lights will stop flashing and the hazard warning lights will switch on. The hazard warning lights are automatically switched off when you accelerate or restart the vehicle.
- On long, steep gradients, reduce your speed and change to a lower gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to a lower gear position (automatic gearbox). This uses the force of the engine and the brakes do not suffer as much. If you still have to brake, do so intermittently, pressing down repeatedly on the brake pedal.

- Vehicle modifications (e.g. to the engine, brakes, frame or a combination of wheels and tyres) could impair the brake assist systems ⇒ page 195, Accessories, modifications and spare parts.
- In the event of a fault in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL are switched off automatically. A fault in the ABS is indicated by the ⇒ page 70 warning lamp.

Brakes

Wear

The rate of wear of the brake pads depends on the driving style and on the way in which the vehicle is used. The brake pads will wear more quickly if you use your vehicle frequently in urban traffic and short trips or drive in a sporty style. Under these **demanding conditions**, visit your specialised service, even before the scheduled service date, so that the thickness of the brake pads can be measured.

Wet roads or road salt

If brakes are wet or frozen, or if you are driving on roads which have been gritted with salt, braking power may set in later than normal. Dry the brakes as soon as possible by braking repeatedly.

Corrosion

Long periods of inactivity and little use can lead to rust on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads. Where the brake system is subjected to light stress or in the case of corrosion, clean the brake discs by braking fully several times at a high speed.

Brake system fault

If you notice that the braking distance suddenly increases and the brake pedal can be pressed down more fully, there may be a fault in the brake system. Visit a specialised service immediately and adjust your driving style to the extent of the damage and to limit the effect of the brakes.

Low brake fluid level

Insufficient brake fluid could cause faults in the brake system. The brake fluid level is controlled electronically ⇒ page 66, Brake system.

Brake servo

The brake servo supplements the pressure you exert on the brake pedal. The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

Handbrake

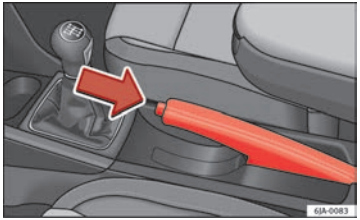

Fig. 103 Centre console: handbrake

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up all the way.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and press the unlock button **at the same time** ⇒ Fig. 103.

– Keep the button pressed down and push the lever all the way down.

The warning lamp lights up when the handbrake is applied with the ignition on (P).

Stability system (ESC)

Fig. 104 ESC system: ASR switch

The ESC system increases control of the vehicle in emergency situations, e.g. during a sudden change in direction. Depending on the driving conditions, it reduces the risk of skidding and increases driving stability.

The system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares them with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. When irregularities occur, for example, if the vehicle begins to skid, the ESC brakes the appropriate wheel automatically.

The warning lamp in the general instrument panel starts flashing when the system is working.

The **stability (ESC)** system includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock brake system (ABS)
- Traction control system (ASR)
- Electronic differential lock (EDL)
- Brake assist system (HBA)
- Hill hold control (HHC)

The ESC system cannot be switched on. The ⇒ Fig. 104 button can only be used to switch off the ASR system. The warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the ASR system is switched off.

The ASR should be switched on at all times. Only under certain circumstances should the system be switched off, e.g.

- Driving with chains
- Driving in deep snow or on very soft surfaces
- During the “swinging movement” required to remove a stuck vehicle

Switch the ASR back on as soon as possible.

Brake assist system (HBA)*

The HBA system is activated when you press down on the brake pedal suddenly. It increases braking power, helping to reduce braking distances. To reduce the braking distance as much as possible, keep the brake pedal pressed down firmly until the vehicle comes to a standstill.

With the help of this system, the ABS is activated more quickly and more efficiently.

The brake assist function is deactivated automatically when the brake pedal is released.

Hill hold control (HHC)*

The HHC system makes it easier to start the vehicle on hills. The system maintains the brake pressure created by pressing down on the brake pedal for 2 seconds after it has been released. Your foot can be removed from the brake pedal and you can use the accelerator pedal and move away on a hill without having to use the handbrake. The brake pressure drops as the accelerator pedal is pressed. If the vehicle is not started then it will start to move backwards after two seconds.

The HHC is activated on gradients of over 5 %, as the driver door is closed. It only works to start on hills, moving both forwards and in reverse. It is not activated during start-up down hill.

Anti-lock system (ABS)

The ABS system prevents the wheels locking during braking. This helps the driver keep control of the vehicle.

The driver is made aware of ABS assistance **by the pulsating of the brake pedal** and a characteristic noise.

Keep the brake pedal pressed down while the ABS is working. The ABS will switch off when the brake pedal is released. Never brake intermittently while the ABS is working!

Traction control system (ASR)

If the wheels start to slide, the ASR adapts the engine speed to the driving conditions. Particularly in unfavourable conditions, ASR helps starting, accelerating and hill starts.

The (TC)[1] warning lamp in the general instrument panel flashes when the system is working.

Electronic differential lock

If one of the wheels starts to skid, the EDL brakes that wheel, transmitting the driving force to the other wheels. This increases vehicle stability and improves driving stability.

To prevent the disc brake of the braking wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle will continue to function normally without EDL. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Manual gearbox

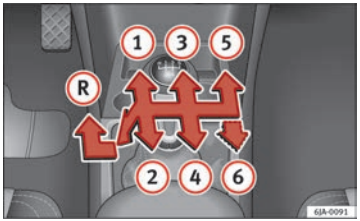

Fig. 105 Gear shift pattern of a 5 or 6-speed manual gearbox

When changing gear, always depress the clutch pedal fully and keep it pressed down to avoid excessive clutch wear.

In order to drive at an optimum RPM, respect the gear change indications ⇒ page 58.

[1] Valid for vehicles not fitted with the stability control system (ESC).

Engage reverse gear only when the vehicle is stopped. On engaging reverse gear while the engine is running, first wait a moment with the clutch pedal pressed down fully to limit gear shift noise.

The reverse lights switch on when the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when moving forwards. Risk of accident!

Note

Do not rest your hand on the gear lever while driving. The pressure of your hand could lead to premature wear of the gear system.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

WARNING

- **Never press the accelerator when selecting the operating mode of the automatic gearbox when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident!**
- **Never move the selector lever to positions R or P when driving. Risk of accident!**
- **If the vehicle is to be stopped with a gear selected and the engine idling (e.g. waiting or moving slowly at traffic lights), press down on the brake pedal because the transmission is not entirely interrupted when the engine is idling and the vehicle will tend to start moving.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Apply the handbrake firmly and put the selector lever in position P before opening the bonnet and working on the vehicle with the engine running. Risk of accident! Strictly follow the safety instructions ⇒page 173, Engine compartment.**
- **When stopping on a slope (hill), try not to stop the vehicle from moving by pressing the "accelerator" with a gear selected. This could overheat the clutch. If the clutch risks being burnt due to this force, it would switch off and the vehicle could move backwards. Risk of accident!**
- **If you have to stop on a hill, press down on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle from moving.**
- **The drive wheels could lose traction on a slippery road surface when the kick-down function is activated. Risk of sliding!**

CAUTION

- In DSG automatic gearboxes, the double clutch is protected from overloads. If the hill hold control is used, the clutches are subjected to greater force if the vehicle is at a standstill on a slope or suddenly accelerating on a slope.
- Should the clutches overheat, the symbol is shown on the informative display with a warning message **Gear overheated. Stop! Instruction Manual!** An audible warning is also heard. Stop the vehicle in this case, stop the engine and wait until the symbol has switched off. Danger of damage to the gearbox! You can continue driving once the symbol is switched off.

Basic information

The gearbox changes up and down automatically. The gearbox can be set to **Tiptronic** mode. The gears can be changed manually in this mode ⇒page 145.

The engine can only be **started** in positions **P** or **N**. If, on engaging the steering lock, switching the ignition on/off or starting the engine, the selector lever is not in position **P** or **N**, the informative display will show **Move the selector lever to position P/N!** or → **P/N** is shown on the general instrument panel display.

The engine can only be started in position **P** at temperatures below -10 °C (14 °F).

Move the selector lever to position **P** when parking the vehicle on a flat surface. On a slope, the handbrake should be firmly applied before moving the selector lever to the park position. This reduces the load on the lock mechanism while making it easier to move the selector lever from position **P**.

If, while the vehicle is moving, the selector lever is accidentally moved to position **N**, release the accelerator and wait for the engine to idle before moving it back into position. ■

Starting and driving

Starting

– Press and hold the brake pedal.

– Press and hold the interlock button on the selector lever knob and move the selector lever to position ⇒ page 144 before releasing the interlock button.

– Release the brake and press the accelerator.

Stopping

– The selector lever does not have to be moved to position **N** if the vehicle is stopped for a short period, e.g. at junctions. Applying the brake is enough. However, the engine must remain idling.

Parking

– Press the brake pedal.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Press the interlock button, move the selector lever to position **P** and release the button. ■

Selector lever positions

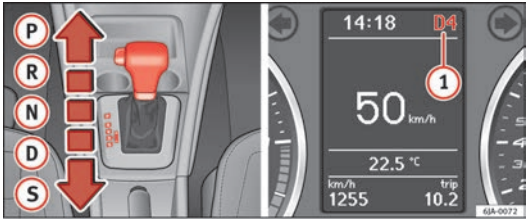

Fig. 106 Selector lever/Informative display: selector lever positions

The current position of the selector lever is shown on the general instrument panel display (1) ⇒ Fig. 106.

(P) – Parking position

In this position, the driven wheels are mechanically locked.

The parking position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

If you want to move the selector lever from this position, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob while pressing down on the brake pedal.

If the battery is drained, the selector lever cannot be moved from position **P**. ▶

(R) – Reverse

Reverse gear must be engaged only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

To move the selector lever to position **R** from positions **P** or **N**, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob and press down on the brake pedal.

The reverse lights come on when the selector lever is in position **R** and the ignition is on.

(N) – Neutral (idling)

Neutral (idling) is engaged in this position.

To move the selector lever from position **N** (if the lever has remained in this position for more than 2 seconds) to position **D** or **R** at speeds of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and when the vehicle is stationary, press down on the brake pedal.

(D) – Drive (forwards)

In this position, the gearbox automatically changes to a lower or higher gear, depending on engine requirements, the driving speed and the gear shift programme.

To move the selector lever to position **D** from position **N** at speeds of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and when the vehicle is stationary, press down on the brake pedal.

In some situations (e.g. on mountain roads or when towing a trailer or caravan), it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to the manual shift programme ⇒ page 145 so that the gear ratios can be selected manually to suit driving conditions.

(S) – Sports driving position

Shifting up later than usual makes full use of the engine power. This shifts down earlier in relation to position **D**.

To move the selector lever to position **S** from position **D**, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob. ■

Tiptronic gearbox

Fig. 107 Selector lever: Tiptronic

The Tiptronic gearbox allows the driver to change gears manually using the selector lever.

Activating the manual gearbox

– From position **D**, push the selector lever to the right. The selected position of the selector lever is shown on the general instrument panel display together with the gear engaged (1) ⇒ Fig. 106.

Shifting up

– Push the selector lever gently forwards (+) ⇒ Fig. 107.

Shifting down

– Push the selector lever gently backwards (-) ⇒ Fig. 107. ▶

The manual gearbox can be activated when the vehicle is either moving or stationary.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached.

On shifting up, the gear is only engaged when there is no risk of engine damage.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed down to the kick-down zone, the gearbox will shift down in line with the road speed and engine speed.

Note

The kick-down function is also available in manual shift mode. ■

Selector lever lock

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the positions **P** and **N** when the ignition is on. Press down on the brake to unlock it. Remember, if the selector lever is in positions **P** and **N** then the ⇒ page 73 warning lamp will light up on the general instrument panel.

When the selector lever merely moves through position **N** (e.g. when moved from **R** to **D**), the lever lock is not applied. This makes it possible, for example, to rock a stuck vehicle backwards and forwards. The lock is only applied if the brake is not pressed and the selector lever is moved to position **N** for more than 2 seconds.

The selector lever lock is only activated in vehicles that are stationary or at speeds of less than 5 km/h (3 mph). It is automatically switched off in position **N** at higher speeds.

Interlock button

The interlock button on the selector lever knob prevents the driver from inadvertently engaging a gear. Press the button to unlock the selector lever.

Safety interlock for ignition key[1)]

After switching off the ignition, you can only remove the ignition key if the selector lever is in position **P**. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever is locked in position **P**. ■

Kick-down feature

The kick-down feature allows maximum acceleration to be reached.

In any gear programme, press down fully on the accelerator for the automatic gearbox to activate the kick-down feature. This function takes priority over the gear programmes without taking into account the position of the selector lever (**D**, **S** or **Tiptronic**) and is used to reach maximum acceleration, using full engine power. Depending on the road speed and engine speed, the automatic gearbox shifts down and the vehicle accelerates. It only shifts up after the maximum engine speed has been reached. ■

Driving programmes

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled automatic gearbox. Shifting up or down depends on the programme selected.

For a **calm driving style**, the gearbox uses the most economic programme. The gearbox shifts up as quickly as possible and shifts down as late as possible, thus increasing driving economy. ▶

1) Valid only for certain countries.

With a **sporty driving style**, characterised by sudden acceleration, heavy acceleration, speeds that often increase and decrease and maximum speed, the gearbox adapts to this driving style when the accelerator is pressed fully down (kick-down) by shifting down as quickly as possible and can even shift down by several gears at once.

Selecting the best driving programmes is an endless job. Regardless of this, the driver can also make the gearbox switch to a more dynamic gear shift programme by pressing the accelerator quickly. This makes the automatic gearbox shift down into a lower gear that would normally apply to the current speed for more rapid acceleration (e.g. to overtake another vehicle) without having to press the accelerator fully down into the kick-down position. On shifting up in a corresponding driving style, the gearbox returns to the original programme.

When driving along mountain roads, the gearbox adapts to the gradients. This avoids having to frequently change gears when driving uphill. In Tiptronic mode, it is possible to shift down manually when driving downhill to use the braking effect of the engine. ■

Back-up programme

A back-up programme exists in case of faults.

In the event of a fault in the gearbox electronics, this will continue to work in one of the corresponding back-up programmes. All segments of the screen are lit up or switched off.

The fault can be seen as follows:

- The gearbox only engages certain gears
- Reverse gear **R** cannot be engaged
- The manual gearbox switches off in the back-up programme

Note

If the gearbox switches to the back-up programme, visit an Authorised Service as soon as possible to solve the problem. ■

Manual release of the selector lever

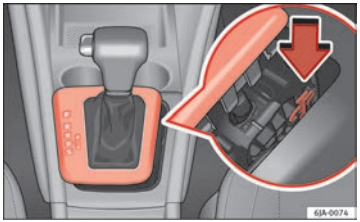

Fig. 108 Manual release of the selector lever

If there is a fault in the power system to the electronic selector lever lock system (flat battery, blown fuse) or the system itself is faulty, the selector lever cannot be moved from position **P** in the normal manner, which prevents the vehicle from being moved. The selector lever must be unlocked using the manual release.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Pull gently on both sides at the front of the selector lever cover.

– Also loosen the cover at the rear.

– Press the yellow plastic part with your finger in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 108. ▶

– Press the interlock button on the selector lever knob at the same time and move the selector lever to position **N** (if the selector lever were to be moved back to position **P** then it would lock again).

Foot pedals

Under no circumstances must correct use of the pedals be impaired!

Only a floor mat secured to the two corresponding fastening points may be used in the driver footwell.

Only use floor mats from the catalogue of SEAT Original Accessories that fasten at two points.

WARNING

No object must be left in the driver footwell. Risk of preventing or limiting use of the foot pedals!

Parking aid*

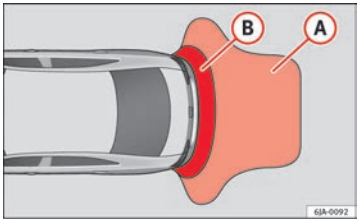

Fig. 109 Parking aid: sensor range

Ultrasound sensors are used so that the parking aid system can calculate the distance between the rear bumper and an obstacle. The sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Sensor range

The warning begins at a distance of 160 cm from the obstacle (zone A ⇒ Fig. 109). As the obstacle is approached, the audible warning sounds with increasing frequency.

At a distance of approx. 30 cm (zone B), a warning tone will sound continuously. Danger zone. **Stop reversing immediately!**

In vehicles factory-fitted with certain audio or radio-navigation system models, the distance from the obstacle is displayed graphically on the screen. See the audio or navigation system Instruction Manual.

In vehicles factory-fitted with a towing system, the rear area at which the system starts to indicate the obstacle is extended by around 5 centimetres. The length of the vehicle can be extended by a detachable towing bracket.

In vehicles factory-fitted with towing equipment, the sensors are deactivated when towing a trailer or caravan.

Switching the parking aid system on and off

Parking aid is switched on when the ignition is on and **reverse gear** engaged. This is confirmed by a short audible warning.

Parking aid is switched off when reverse gear is released.

WARNING

- **Parking aid does not free the driver from responsibility when parking or performing similar manoeuvres. Pay special attention to small children or animals, as the parking aid sensors may not always be able to detect them.**
- **Before reversing or parking, make sure there are no small obstacles, e.g. stones, narrow pillars, towing brackets, etc. in front and behind the vehicle. These obstacles may not always be detected by the parking aid device.**
- **The surface of certain objects may not reflect the signals of the parking aid sensors. Therefore, people wearing clothing of this kind may not be detected by the parking aid system.**
- **Outside noise may interfere with the parking aid system. Under certain unfavourable circumstances, certain objects or people may not be detected.**

Note

- If a constant sound at a higher frequency is emitted for 3 seconds when the system is switched on then there is a fault in the system. Please take the vehicle to a specialised technical service to solve this fault.
- To ensure that the parking aid system works properly, the sensors must be kept clean (e.g. free of ice).
- If the parking aid system is switched on when the automatic gearbox selector lever is in position **P**, the acoustic signal will be interrupted (the car cannot be moved).

Cruise control

Introduction

The cruise control system allows you to drive at a constant speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) or higher without having to press the accelerator. However, the speed is only maintained within the margin permitted by the engine power and the braking effect of the engine.

The warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if cruise control is switched on.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or where roads conditions are poor (e.g. due to ice, aquaplaning, loose grit, snow). Risk of accident!**
- **The programmed speed can only be re-established if it is not too high for current traffic conditions.**
- **Always switch the cruise control system off after using it in order to avoid involuntary use.**

CAUTION

- The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when the vehicle is moving downhill. The vehicle tends to accelerate under its own weight. Therefore, shift down or use the brake pedal in good time to slow the vehicle.

Note

- In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the cruise control system cannot be switched on if the selector lever is in position **P**, **N** or **R**.
- In vehicles with a manual gearbox, the cruise control cannot be switched on if first gear or reverse gear is engaged.

Setting speed

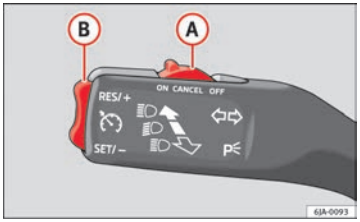

Fig. 110 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever: cruise control buttons

Setting speed

– Move knob (A) ⇒ Fig. 110 to the **ON** position.

– Briefly press rocker switch (B) in **SET** position when you have reached the speed you wish to set.

On releasing rocker switch (B) in **SET**, the current speed is stored and will remain constant without having to press the accelerator pedal. ■

Adjusting set speed

Increasing speed by pressing the accelerator pedal

– Press the accelerator to increase the speed of the vehicle.

– Release the accelerator and the previously programmed speed will be resumed.

If, when pressing the accelerator, the vehicle exceeds the programmed speed by more than 10 km/h (6 mph) for more than 3 minutes, the set speed will be deleted. The speed will have to be stored again.

Increasing speed by pressing switch (B).

– Press rocker switch (B) ⇒ Fig. 110 ⇒ page 150 in **RES**.

– If the button is held down in **RES**, the speed increases continuously. Release the switch when the required speed is reached. The speed is stored.

Setting a lower speed

– The set speed can be **reduced** by pressing switch (B) ⇒ Fig. 110 ⇒ page 150 in **SET**.

– If the button is held down in **SET**, the speed lowers continuously. Release the switch when the required speed is reached. The speed is stored.

– On releasing the switch at speeds of less than 30 km/h (19 mph), no speed will be set and the memory will be deleted. The vehicle must be moving at a speed of over 30 km/h (10 mph) and switch (B) pressed again in **SET** for it to be set.

The speed can be reduced by pressing the brake pedal, which temporarily switches off the cruise control. ■

Switching off cruise control temporarily

Cruise control **is switched off temporarily** by pressing switch (A) ⇒ Fig. 110 ⇒ page 150 in **CANCEL** or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed is stored. ▶

To **recover** the set speed, briefly press switch (B) in **RES** once you have released the brake or clutch pedal. ■

Switching off cruise control completely

– Move knob (A) ⇒ Fig. 110 ⇒ page 150 to **OFF**. ■

START-STOP*

Fig. 111 Instrument panel: Start-Stop system button

The START-STOP system helps save fuel and reduce harmful emissions and CO_2.

The system is automatically switched on every time the ignition is switched on.

The system automatically switches off the engine when the vehicle is stationary, e.g. waiting at traffic lights.

The current status of the START-STOP system is displayed on the general instrument panel display.

Automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)

– Stop the vehicle (if necessary using the handbrake).

– Shift to neutral.

– Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine start up (Start phase)

– Release the clutch pedal.

Switching the START-STOP system on and off

The START-STOP system can be switched on and off by pressing the (A OFF) ⇒ Fig. 111 button.

The warning lamp in the button will light up when the system is switched off.

If the vehicle is in Stop phase when the button is pressed, the engine will start immediately.

The START-STOP system works under complex driving conditions that are difficult to detect without specialist technology. The set of necessary conditions for the correct operating of the START-STOP system are indicated below.

Conditions for automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)

- Selector lever in neutral
- Clutch pedal not pressed
- Driver with seat belt fastened
- Driver door closed
- Bonnet closed
- Vehicle stationary
- The factory-fitted towing bracket is not electrically connected to a trailer ▶

- Engine at operating temperature
- Vehicle's battery sufficiently charged
- Vehicle not on a very steep slope
- Engine speed below 1200 rpm
- Vehicle's battery temperature is neither too high nor too low
- Sufficient brake system pressure
- Difference between outside temperature and set interior temperature not too great
- Vehicle speed since last time the engine started was above 3 km/h (2 mph)
- Particulate filter ⇒ page 71 not being cleaned
- Front wheels not overly turned (steering wheel turned less than three quarters of a turn)

Conditions for engine start up (Start phase)

- Clutch pedal pressed
- Max./min. temperature set
- Windscreen defrost function switched on
- High blower speed
- START-STOP button pressed

Conditions for automatic engine start up without driver involvement

- Vehicle moving at a speed of over 3 km/h (2 mph)
- Difference between outside temperature and interior temperature is too great
- Vehicle's battery insufficiently charged
- Insufficient brake system pressure

If the driver seat belt is unfastened for more than 30 seconds in Stop phase, the engine must be started using the ignition key. Please observe the messages on the general instrument panel display.

Warnings on the instrument panel display (valid for vehicles not fitted with an informative display)

FAULT: START-STOP	Fault in the START-STOP system
START-STOP IMPOSSIBLE	Engine cannot be automatically shut down
START-STOP ACTIVE	Automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)
SWITCH OFF IGNITION	Switch ignition off.
START MANUALLY	Start the engine manually

WARNING

- **If the engine is switched off, neither the brake servo or the power steering will work.**
- **Do not move the vehicle when the engine is switched off.**

CAUTION

Switch off the START-STOP system ⇒ page 159 before driving through a pool of water on the road.

Note

- The battery temperature may reflect the changes in outside temperature after several hours. If the vehicle has been stopped outside at temperatures below zero or in direct sunlight, for example, the battery temperature may take several hours to reach the values required for the correct operating of the START-STOP system.
- If the Climatronic system is operating automatically, this could impair automatic engine shut down in certain conditions.

Practical Tips

Driving and the environment

The first 1500 km (900 miles)

New engine

Over the first 1500 kilometres (900 miles) the engine must be run in.

Up to 1000 kilometres (600 miles)

– Do not drive at more than 3/4 of the maximum speed corresponding to the engaged gear, i.e. up to 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine speed.

– Do not drive at full speed.

– Avoid high engine speeds.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 to 1500 kilometres (600 to 900 miles)

– **Slowly** increase the engine speed until reaching the maximum permitted speed of the engaged gear, i.e. the maximum permitted engine speed.

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on, when all the moving parts have bedded in. How the vehicle is driven over approximately the first 1500 kilometres (900 miles), determines the success of the process of running in the engine.

After the running in, the vehicle should not be driven at **high engine speeds**. The maximum permitted engine speed is marked at the start of the red zone on the rev counter dial. The gear must be changed up when the red area is reached in vehicles with a manual gearbox. **Extremely** high engine speeds when accelerating are automatically limited, however the engine is not protected against high engine speeds produced by incorrectly changing to a lower gear, which could cause the engine to run at revs above the maximum permitted amount, and consequently result in damage to the engine.

Additionally, vehicles with a manual gearbox must also bear the following in mind: do not drive with the engine speed too **low**. Change down to a lower gear when the engine no longer runs smoothly. Observe the recommendations for changing gear ⇒ page 58, Recommended gear display.

CAUTION

All the information for speed and engine speed refers to an engine that operates at operating temperature. Do not run the engine at high engine speeds, neither when stopped or while driving.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds – an anticipated change to a higher gear contributes to saving fuel, reducing operating noise and protects the environment. ■

New tyres

New tyres must be submitted to “running in”, given that initially their grip is not yet at the maximum level. During approximately the first 500 km (120 miles) drive very carefully. ■

New brake pads

New brake pads do not yet provide maximum friction capacity. New brake pads must be “run in” first. During approximately the first 200 km (120 miles) drive very carefully. ■

Catalytic converter

An exhaust gas emission control system (catalytic converter) that functions perfectly is vitally important for vehicle operation that respects the environment.

Please observe the following indications:

- Refuel only using unleaded petrol ⇒ page 172, Unleaded petrol in petrol engine vehicles.
- Do not add too much oil to the engine ⇒ page 177, Checking the engine oil level;.
- Do not switch off the ignition while driving.

If you are required to drive in a country where unleaded fuel is not available and when returning to a country where using a catalytic converter is obligatory, the catalytic converter must be replaced.

WARNING

- **Due to the high temperatures that the catalytic converter can reach, the vehicle must be stopped so that the catalytic converter does not come into contact with easily flammable material underneath the vehicle. Risk of fire!**
- **Never use substances for additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion for the exhaust pipes, the catalytic converter or the antithermic screen. Risk of fire!**

CAUTION

- Never completely empty the tank! An irregular fuel supply can cause ignition faults, which can result in damage to a substantial amount of engine parts and the exhaust system.
- Refuelling just once with leaded petrol disables the exhaust system! ■

Economical and ecological driving

General notes

Fuel consumption, environmental impact and engine, brake and tyre wear depend largely on three factors:

- personal driving style
- the conditions in which the vehicle is used
- prior technical conditions

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. ▶

Fuel consumption also depends on factors that cannot be influenced by the driver. It is normal for consumption to be greater in winter or in difficult conditions, on roads in poor condition, when towing a trailer, etc.

Fuel consumption can also vary considerably from that stated by the manufacturer due to the outside temperature, the weather and driving style.

The vehicle has factory-fitted technical conditions in order to save fuel and to operate in economic mode. SEAT pays special attention to minimize the environmental impact. Take the following indications in this chapter into account in order to conserve and to take advantage of these qualities:

The engine speed must be maintained at the maximum in order to prevent vehicle resonance and high fuel consumption. ■

Foresighted driving

The vehicle consumes the majority of fuel when accelerating, therefore avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. For example, when approaching a red traffic light, allow the vehicle to decelerate freely or use the engine braking effect. ■

Saving energy when changing gear

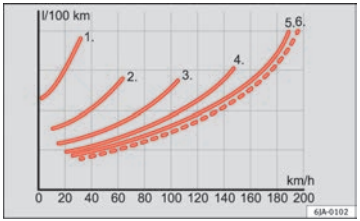

Fig. 112 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km (miles) relating to the engaged gear

Changing up early to the next higher gear will save fuel.

Manual gearbox

- Drive in first gear only at a length of approximately one length of the vehicle.
- When 2000 revs have been reached, change up to the next gear.

An efficient way of saving fuel is to change up **early** to a higher gear. Observe the recommendations for changing gear ⇒ page 58, Recommended gear display.

An appropriately engaged gear can influence fuel consumption ⇒ Fig. 112.

Automatic gearbox

- Press the accelerator pedal **slowly**. Avoid pressing the pedal to the kick-down position.
- If you press the accelerator pedal slowly with an automatic gearbox, and economical program will automatically be selected.

Note

Observe the recommendations for changing gear ⇒ page 58. ■

Avoid driving at full speed

Fuel can be saved by driving at a slower speed.

Accelerating slowly not only considerably reduces fuel consumption, but also reduces the environmental impact and vehicle wear.

If possible, you should never take advantage of the maximum speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions of toxic substances and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds.

You can reduce fuel consumption by about one half if you do not drive faster than three quarters of top speed. ■

Reduce idling

Idling also consumes fuel.

In a vehicle that does not have the START-STOP function, stop the engine in traffic jams, level crossings and at traffic lights that remain red for a long period of time. After 30-40 seconds with the engine switched off, the fuel savings are greater that the quantity of fuel required to restart the engine again.

When the engine is idling, a great deal of time is required in order for the engine to reach operating temperature. When heating the vehicle, however, engine waste and emissions of toxic substances are elevated. Therefore, immediately begin driving after switching on the engine. Doing so avoids high engine speeds. ■

Regular maintenance

A badly tuned engine unnecessarily consumes a large quantity of fuel.

Conditions for economical driving can be created with regular maintenance at an Official Service. Maintenance of your vehicle has positive repercussions on traffic safety and conserving the value of the vehicle.

A badly tuned engine can result in fuel consumption that is 10% higher than normal!

Additionally, check the **oil level** after refuelling. **Oil consumption** depends to a great extent on the engine load and engine speed. Depending on your driving style, oil consumption can reach 0.5 litres per 1000 km (600 miles).

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine not to reach its minimum level until after a period of running in time. Therefore, the oil consumption of a new vehicle can only be judged correctly after covering 5000 km (3000 miles).

For the sake of the environment

- An additional reduction in consumption can be achieved using high-performance synthetic oils.
- In order to detect leaks in good time, check the ground underneath the vehicle regularly. If you notice stains from oils or other operating liquids, contact an Official Service.

Note

We recommend that you have regular maintenance performed on your vehicle a the SEAT Authorised Service. ■

Make less short journeys

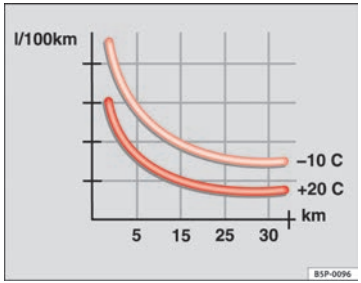

Fig. 113 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km (miles) at different temperatures

In short journeys fuel consumption quantity is incomparably high. Therefore we recommend avoiding journeys of less than 4 km (2 miles) when the engine is cold.

Immediately after starting, a cold engine consumes the maximum amount of fuel. After driving approximately one kilometre (0.62 miles), consumption drops approximately 10 litres per 100 km (62 miles). Consumption returns to normal only after the engine and the catalytic converter have reached operating temperature.

In this context, this is also determined by the **outside temperature**. Fuel consumption is different for the same journey, as shown once at +20 °C (+68 °F) and again at -10 °C (+14 °F) ⇒ Fig. 113. Your vehicle will consume more fuel in winter than in summer. ■

Maintain correct tyre pressure

Maintaining correct tyre pressure saves fuel.

Always maintain correct tyre pressure. Insufficiently tyre pressure increases rolling resistance. This leads not only to increased fuel consumption, but also tyre wear and deteriorated vehicle behaviour.

Always check the tyre pressure when the tyre is **cold**. ■

Do not carry unnecessary loads

Transporting unnecessary loads also consumes fuel.

Every **additional kilo of weight** increases fuel consumption. Check for unnecessary objects in the luggage compartment.

The weight of the vehicle considerably influences fuel consumption, especially in urban traffic where frequent acceleration is required. As a general rule, every 100 kg of weight increases consumption by approximately 1 litre per 100 km (62 miles).

Your vehicle consumes almost 10% more fuel than the normal amount at a speed of 100 – 120 km/h (62 – 75 mph) when a roof carrier without a load is fitted. ■

Save electrical energy

An electrical current is generated with help from the alternator when the engine is running. The more electrical devices there are connected to the on-board network, the larger the quantity of fuel is required for the alternator service. This is why electrical devices should be disconnected when they are not required. ■

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and production of your new SEAT vehicle. Among other points, the following has been taken into account.

Design measures

- Joints and connections designed for easy dismantling
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling
- The purest raw materials and construction materials
- Marking of all the plastic parts according to the VDA 260 recommendation
- Reduction of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions
- Minimization of the fuel exhaust in the case of an accident
- Reduction in the noise level

Choice of materials

- Recycled materials are widely used
- CFC-free coolant in air conditioner
- Cadmium has not been used
- Asbestos has not been used
- Reduction of plastic “evaporation”

Manufacturing methods

- Solvent-free cavity sealing
- Solvent-free wax for protecting the vehicles in transit
- Solvent-free adhesives have been used
- CFCs have been eliminated from production
- Mercury has not been used
- Water-soluble paint has been used

Collection and utilization of used vehicles

SEAT meets the demands placed on the brand and its products with respect to protecting the environment and resources. Up to 95 % of all new SEAT vehicles can be recycled and in general can be collected without charge[1]. Systems for returning your used vehicle have been created in many countries. After collection you will be given a receipt confirming that your vehicle will be disposed of ecologically, respecting applicable legislation.

Note

More detailed information regarding the collection and utilization of use vehicles can be obtained from an authorised SEAT dealer. ■

Driving abroad

General notes

It is possible that in some countries the SEAT dealer network is limited or inexistent. Therefore it is difficult to acquire certain spare parts and the workers at the specialised workshops can only carry out limited repair works. SEAT will inform you about the technical requirements of your vehicle, necessary maintenance work and possibilities for repair. ■

[1] Always observe national legislation.

Unleaded petrol

Refuel only using unleaded petrol ⇒ page 154, Catalytic converter in petrol engine vehicles. Automobile associations will provide information regarding the network of petrol stations offering unleaded petrol. ■

Headlights

Your dipped beam headlights are adjusted in an asymmetrical formation. The side of the road on which you are driving is illuminated more brightly.

If you are driving in a foreign country where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road this will dazzle the oncoming traffic. In order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic, it is essential to have the headlights adjusted at an authorised SEAT dealer.

Note

You will receive information about the modification of the headlights at an authorised SEAT dealer. ■

Preventing damage to the vehicle

In order to prevent damage to the vehicle, take special care:

- on roads in poor condition
- when mounting the kerb
- when approaching very steep ramps, etc.
- with the parts of the vehicle situated on the lower part of the vehicle, i.e. the spoiler, the exhaust pipe,

This applies especially to vehicles with a very low suspension (sport) and when the vehicle is fully loaded. ■

Driving through water

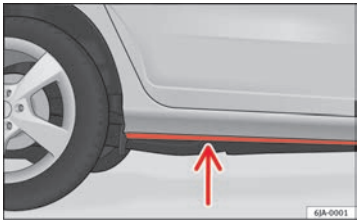

Fig. 114 Driving through water

To prevent the vehicle from being damaged when driving through water (i.e. flooded roads), please observe the following:

- Determine the depth of the water before entering. The water can reach a maximum height of below the door sill ⇒ Fig. 114.
- Drive at a maximum pace of walking speed. Driving at a higher speed can cause a wave in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to enter the engine air intake system or other parts of the vehicle.
- Never stop in the water, never reverse and never stop the engine.
- Before driving through water deactivate the START-STOP system ⇒ page 151. ▶

WARNING

- **Driving through water, dirt and mud can reduce braking capability and prolong the braking distance – Risk of accident!**
- **Do not carry out any sudden or strong braking manoeuvres after driving through water.**
- **Clean and dry the brakes as soon as possible after driving through water by breaking intermittently. Carry out braking in order to dry the brakes and clean the brake discs only if traffic so permits. Do not put other drivers at risk.**

CAUTION

- In the event of driving through water the parts of the vehicle can be seriously damaged, such as the engine, gearbox, catalytic converter, suspension or the electrical system.
- Oncoming vehicles that drive through water can cause waves that exceed your vehicle's permitted level for driving through water.
- There may be pot-holes mud or rocks under the water that can hinder or prevent driving through water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can cause rust. All components that are exposed to salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water we recommend that you contact a specialised service for an inspection.

Driving the vehicle with a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer

Technical requirements

If your vehicle has a factory-fitted towing bracket or is equipped with a selection of SEAT Original Accessories, it meets all the relevant technical and legal requirements.

In vehicles with a towing bracket it is possible to remove the ball joint, situated (together with the special assembly instructions) in the housing for the spare wheel in the vehicle luggage compartment ⇒ page 198, Vehicle tool kit*.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pole power socket for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle. If the trailer you are going to use has a **7-pin connector**, the corresponding adaptor, acquired from the SEAT Original Accessories Catalogue, can be used.

If a towing bracket is to be retro-fitted to the car, it must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

Note

Any queries that may arise can be directed to an authorised SEAT dealer. ■

Trailer weight

Trailer weight

The combined vehicle and trailer must be balanced. To do so use the maximum permitted towing bracket load. An insufficient weight exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket will have a negative impact upon the response of the vehicle-trailer assembly on the road.

Weight distribution

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Ensure that the objects do not move.

If the towing vehicle is empty and the trailer loaded then the load distribution is incorrect. However, if these conditions cannot be avoided, drive very slowly.

Tyre pressure values

Correct the tyre pressure in your vehicle to “total load” ⇒ page 188, Tyre useful life.

Trailer weight

Never exceed the authorised trailer weight under any circumstances ⇒ page 226, Description of the data.

The trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1000 m above sea level. Due to a lower air density the engine power decreases depending on the increase in altitude, this also causes the climbing ability to decrease, which requires a reduction of the weight of the vehicle with a trailer by 10 % for every 1000 m increase in altitude. The weight of the assembly is calculated by adding the vehicle weight (loaded) to the trailer weight (loaded). Always drive with special care when towing a trailer.

The towed load and support load information that is displayed on the towing bracket manufacturers label are only values for the verification of the device. The correct figures for your specific vehicle, which are usually lower than these figures, are given in the documentation of your vehicle. ▶

WARNING

- **Exceeding the maximum established load per axle and the maximum towing bracket load in addition to the maximum permitted load or the load of the vehicle + trailer assembly can cause accidents and serious injuries.**
- **A sliding load could considerably affect the stability and safety of the vehicle + trailer assembly, resulting in accidents and serious injuries.**

Towing a trailer

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard rear vision mirrors. If this is not the case, you should have additional exterior mirrors fitted. Observe the relevant statutory requirements of the country you are in.

Headlights

Before starting a journey, also check the headlight beam settings with the trailer hitched up. Adjust the headlight range settings if necessary ⇒ page 96, Range control of main lights.

Driving speed

For your own safety do not drive faster than the maximum permitted speed indicated on the trailer.

At all times, immediately reduce speed if you detect the slightest swaying movement of the trailer. Never try to “return the trailer to a straight position” by accelerating.

Brakes

Brake in due course! If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then, firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by locking of trailer wheels. Change to a lower gear in good time before descending a slope in order to take advantage of the engine brake.

The trailer is incorporated into the vehicle anti-theft alarm system.

- When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a towing bracket
- When the trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket
- When the vehicle electrical device and the towing bracket are operational
- When the vehicle is locked and the vehicle anti-theft alarm device is activated

Once the electrical connection is interrupted with the vehicle trailer locked, the alarm sounds.

Always switch off the vehicle anti-theft alarm device before connecting or disconnecting a trailer. The vehicle anti-theft alarm device could cause the alarm to sound ⇒ page 88, Anti-theft alarm system.

Engine overheating

In the event that the coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the right section of the scale or to the red area, immediately reduce speed. If the control lamp flashes on the general instrument panel, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine. Wait several minutes and check the coolant level in the tank ⇒ page 179.

Please observe the following indications ⇒ page 68, Coolant level and temperature.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- **Adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions.**
- **An electrical installation that is connected incorrectly or by non-specialised personnel can prevent the connection of the current to the trailer and cause faults in the electrical system operation throughout the entire vehicle, leading to accidents and serious injury.**
- **All electrical work must be carried out only by the specialised services.**
- **Never directly connect the trailer electrical device to the electrical sockets of the reverse driving lights or other sources of electrical current.**

CAUTION

- Avoid corners, and sudden and sharp braking.
- Once the trailing arm has been removed, place the corresponding cover on the hole of the fastening point. This prevents dirt from entering the hole – see the trailer system assembly manual.

Note

- In the event of frequent journeys with a trailer, we recommend also having the vehicle inspected in-between the service intervals.
- When connecting and disconnecting the trailer, the handbrake must be applied.
- For technical reasons, trailers with LED reverse lights cannot be incorporated into the vehicle anti-theft alarm system.

Care of the vehicle and cleaning

Care of the vehicle

Introduction

Regular and suitable care helps to **maintain the useful life** of your vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

We recommend you use cleaning products from the SEAT Original Accessories programme available in SEAT dealers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- **Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage the health if misused.**
- **Always keep car care materials in a safe place out of the reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**
- **When washing the car during the winter season: Moisture and ice on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident!**
- **The ignition must always be switched off when the car is washed. Risk of accident!**
- **Do not clean the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp metal parts!**
- **Perfumes and air fresheners inside the vehicle may be harmful to health at high temperatures in the interior.**

CAUTION

- Check the colour stability of your clothing to avoid damaging or visibly staining the fabric (leather), upholstery and fabric trim.
- Cleaning products containing solvents may damage the material being cleaned.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Risk of damage to paintwork.
- If washing the vehicle with a hose in winter, do not direct the jet of water directly at the locks or at the door seals or bonnet. Risk of freezing.
- Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. on painted surfaces. Risk of damage to the painted surface.
- Do not put stickers on the inner side of the window in areas where heating elements or the aerial is located. This could cause damage and, in the case of the aerial, radio and navigation system reception faults.
- Do not clean the inner side of the window with sharp objects or corrosive or acidic cleaning products. Risk of damaging the heating elements or the aerial.
- Do not attach any fragrance or air freshener to the dash panel. Risk of damage to the dash panel.
- To avoid damaging the parking aid system sensors, spray them only briefly at a minimum distance of 10 cm when cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure or steam cleaner.
- Do not clean the roof panel with a brush. Risk of damage to the panel surface!

For the sake of the environment

- The packaging of the product used to care for your vehicle is hazardous waste. It must be disposed of according to current local law.
- Only wash the car in special wash bays. ▶

Note

- Remove stains from fresh ball-pen and other inks, lipstick, shoe cream and similar stains on the fabric (leather), upholstery and fabric trim as soon as possible.
- We recommend that you visit an authorised SEAT dealer to clean and care for the interior of your vehicle, due to the problems that may arise when cleaning and caring for the interior of your vehicle and to the utensils and knowledge required.

Washing the vehicle

The best protection of the vehicle from the harmful influences of the environment involves **frequent** washing and waxing. The frequency with which the vehicle is washed depends on many different factors, such as:

- Frequency of use
- Type of parking (garage, underneath trees, etc.)
- Time of year
- Weather conditions
- Environmental conditions

The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials remain on the paintwork, the more damage they do. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect.

After the winter season, it is important to have the **underside of the vehicle** washed thoroughly.

Automatic car washes

Your vehicle can be washed in an automatic car wash.

Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows, etc.

If the vehicle has special accessories such as spoilers or a roof carrier or two-way radio aerial, etc., it is advisable to consult the car wash operator beforehand.

The windscreen wiper rubbers must be degreased after going after the car wash and waxing.

Washing by hand

When washing the car by hand, use plenty of water to soften the dirt first and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a **sponge**, **glove** or **brush**. Start on the roof and work down. Use only slight pressure when cleaning the painted surfaces of the vehicle. A **car shampoo** should only be used for very persistent dirt.

Rinse the sponge or glove thoroughly and often.

Wheels, sills and underside should be cleaned last. Use a second sponge for this.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly and then dry with a chamois.

Washing with high-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This particularly applies to the **operating pressure** and the **distance** of the spray from the surface of the vehicle. Do not hold the spray nozzle too close to the parking aid system sensors and soft materials, such as rubber hoses or insulating material.

WARNING

Do no use a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a “rotating jet”!

CAUTION

Do not use water hotter than 60 °C (140 °F). Risk of damage to the vehicle. ■

Waxing and polishing of the vehicle paintwork

Waxing

To a great extent, good waxing protects the vehicle surface from the harmful effects of the environment.

The vehicle must be treated with a high quality, hard wax when water no longer forms droplets on clean paintwork.

The new coat of high quality, hard wax can be applied to the clean, painted surface only when it has fully dried. Even if a wax solution is used regularly in the car wash, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of wax at least twice a year.

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

CAUTION

- Never wax the windows.
- Do not use polishes and hard wax on painted parts with a matt finish or on plastic parts.
- Do not polish your vehicle in a sandy or dusty environment. ■

Cleaning chrome

Clean the chrome first with a clean cloth and then buff up with a soft, dry cloth. If this does not clean the chrome properly, use a special chrome cleaner.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome in a dusty environment or it could be scratched. ■

Paint damage

Minor damage to the paint, such as scratches or stone chips, should be touched up without delay using paint.

Suitable **touch-up brushes** or **sprays** for the colour of your vehicle can be purchased from authorised SEAT dealers.

Note

We recommend you leave paint damage repairs to a SEAT Authorised Service. ■

Plastic parts

Exterior plastic parts will come clean using a damp cloth. If this is not sufficient, plastic parts can also be treated with special solvent-free **plastic cleaning detergents**.

Do not use paint cleaners, polishes or wax on plastic parts. ■

Windows and exterior mirrors

Remove snow and ice from windows and rear vision mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid damaging the surface of the glass, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.

The windows should also be cleaned on the inside at regular intervals.

Use a separate cloth or chamois to dry the windows and rear vision mirrors.

Do not use the chamois used to polish the bodywork to dry the windows. Waxing and polishing residues could cause smears on the glass and hinder visibility.

CAUTION

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. Risk of cracking glass!
- Make sure you do not damage the paintwork on the vehicle on removing snow and ice from the windows and rear vision mirrors.
- Do not remove the snow or ice from windows and mirrors that are dirty with thick particles, e.g. gravel, sand or road salt. Risk of damage to surface of glass and windows. ■

Radio reception and aerial

In vehicles factory-fitted with an audio and navigation system, the aerial may be installed in different places:

- Inside the rear window next to the heating elements
- On the roof of the vehicle ■

Headlights

Use soap and clean, hot water to clean the front headlights.

CAUTION

- **Never** rub the headlights dry and do not use sharp objects to clean the plastic glass material. These could damage the protective paint and cause the headlights to crack.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the glass. This could damage the headlights. ■

Care of rubber seals

The weatherstrips on doors and windows will remain pliable and last longer if they are occasionally treated with a suitable rubber care product. This will prevent premature ageing and leaks. If they are correctly cared for, the seals will be less likely to freeze up in the winter. ■

Door lock cylinder

Special products must be used to defrost lock cylinders. ▶

Note

- Make sure, when washing the vehicle, that the least amount of water possible enters the lock cylinders.
- We recommend the use of products from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories to care for the door lock cylinder.

Wheels

Wheel trims

If you wash the vehicle regularly, you must also thoroughly wash the wheel trims. Regularly remove any brake abrasion residue and road salt from the wheels, otherwise the wheel material could be damaged. Repair any damage to the wheel paintwork immediately.

Alloy wheels

After thorough washing, treat the wheels with a protective product for alloy wheels. Do not use abrasive products to care for the wheels.

WARNING

Moisture, ice and road salt may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

Heavy dirt on the wheels could lead to their misalignment. This could result in vibrations being transmitted to the steering wheel that under certain conditions may cause premature steering wear. This dirt must be removed.

Note

We recommend you leave paint damage repairs to a SEAT Authorised Service.

Underbody sealant

The underside of the vehicle is coated to permanently protect it from chemical and mechanical agents.

Given that damage to the **protective coating** during driving cannot be completely ruled out, we recommend you check the condition of the protective coating on the underbody and suspension at regular intervals, preferably before the start and end of the coldest season of the year.

Authorised SEAT dealers have suitable **special products** and the necessary facilities and are aware of the techniques required for their application. We therefore recommend all touch-up work or additional anti-corrosion measures be performed by an authorised SEAT dealer.

WARNING

Do not apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, particulate filter or heat shields on the exhaust system. Once the engine has reached operating temperature, these substances could catch fire. Risk of fire!

Cavity waxing

All cavities on the vehicle exposed to corrosion are permanently factory-protected by a **wax solution**.

This wax solution does not need to be checked or touched up. Should wax run out of the cavities at high ambient temperatures, remove it using a plastic scraper and clean away any stains using lighter fluid.

WARNING

Note the regulations concerning safety and environmental protection if you use lighter fluid to remove the wax. Risk of fire!

Leatherette and upholstery

Leatherette can be cleaned with a damp cloth. If this is not sufficient, these parts should only be cleaned with **solvent-free plastic care and cleaning products**.

Textile covers and trim parts on doors, rear lid, etc. can be cleaned with special detergents, e.g. dry foam. A soft sponge or brush or a micro-fibre cloth for normal cleaning can be used. Use special products to clean the headliner.

Some upholstery, such as dark jeans fabric, is sometimes not durable enough. This can cause damage or visible colouring of the seat upholstery (leather or fabric), even under normal conditions of use. This is particularly applicable to light-coloured seat upholstery (fabric or leather). This is not an upholstery defect but indicates that the dye in the item of clothing is not solid enough.

Heated seat upholstery

Do not clean the seat upholstery with **damp products**, as this could damage the seat heating system.

Clean the upholstery with special products, e.g. dry foam, etc.

Natural leather

Leather should be looked after from time to time, depending on its use.

Normal cleaning

Moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

More stubborn dirt

Do not let the water soak through the leather or penetrate into the seams.

Dry the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

Removing stains

Remove fresh **water-based** stains such as coffee, tea, juices, blood, etc. with an absorbent cloth or kitchen roll. Use the special detergent to clean dried-on stains.

Remove fresh **fat-based** stains such as butter, mayonnaise, chocolate, etc. with an absorbent cloth or kitchen roll or with the special detergent if the stain has not yet soaked through the surface.

Use a grease-dissolving product to treat **dried-in, fat-based stains**.

Treat **less common stains** such as ball-pen and other inks, felt-tip pens, nail polish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc. with a special leather stain remover.

Leather care

The leather should be treated twice a year with a special leather-care product.

Apply the protective product very sparingly.

Dry the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

CAUTION

- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods so that it does not lose its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period outdoors, cover the leather so that it does not lose its colour.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can leave permanent scratches and rough marks on the surface of the leather.
- Use of the mechanical steering wheel lock can damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.

Note

- Use a suitable impregnating cream with ultra-violet protection at regular intervals and after cleaning. The cream will nourish and moisturise the leather, keep it supple and able to breathe. In addition, it will also help to protect the surface of the leather.
- Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months and remove fresh dirt as necessary.
- Preserve the colour of the leather. A special coloured cream for leather will renew the colour of more heavily worn areas as required.
- Leather is a natural material with specific properties. During vehicle use, parts of the leather covers may change in appearance, such as folds or wrinkles, as a result of their use.

Seat belts

Keep the seat belts clean!

Wash soiled seat belts with mild, soapy water, removing any heavier dirt with a soft brush.

Check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.

Very soiled belts may not retract properly.

WARNING

- **The seat belts should never be removed from the vehicle for cleaning.**
- **Never clean using chemical products, as chemical detergents destroy the fabric. Ensure that the seat belts do not come into contact with corrosive fluids such as acids, etc.**
- **If you find any damage to the belt webbing, belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, the belt in question must be replaced by an Official Service.**
- **Make sure that the inertia reel seat belts are completely dry before allowing them to retract.**

Checking and refilling levels

Fuel

Introduction

The correct type of fuel for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap, along with the tyre size and pressure. ⇒ Fig. 115 B.

The scraper ⇒ Fig. 115 B to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors ⇒ page 167, Windows and exterior mirrors is located on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

WARNING

Observe all relevant statutory regulations on transporting spare fuel canisters. For safety reasons, we do not recommend carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. The canister could be damaged in an accident and fuel may leak. Risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Never completely empty the tank! If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur that can cause damage to many of the engine parts and the exhaust system.
- If any fuel is spilt onto the paintwork of the vehicle, it should be removed immediately. Risk of damage to paintwork! ■

Refuelling

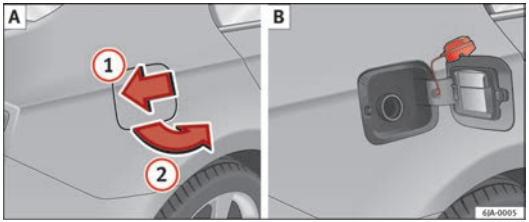

Fig. 115 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Fuel tank flap/fuel tank flap with tank unscrewed cap attached

Opening the tank cap

– Press the flap in the direction of the arrow (1) ⇒ Fig. 115.

– Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (2).

– Hold onto the fuel tank cap with one hand and unlock it using the ignition key, turning it anti-clockwise.

– Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise and place it on top of the tank flap ⇒ Fig. 115 B.

Closing the tank cap

– Screw the tank cap clockwise until it clicks into place.

– Hold onto the fuel tank cap with one hand and lock it using the ignition key, turning it clockwise ▶

– Press the tank flap with your hand to close it.

– Check that the fuel flap is correctly closed.

CAUTION

- Switch off the auxiliary heater (heater and independent heater) before filling the tank.
- The fuel tank is full as soon as the automatic filler nozzle cuts out. Do not continue filling, as this will fill the expansion chamber.

Note

The fuel tank capacity is around **55 litres**, of which **7 litres** are the reserve. ■

Unleaded petrol

Your vehicle must only be run on **unleaded petrol** that complies with the Standard **EN 228** (in Germany, also **DIN 51626 – 1**, or **E10** for unleaded petrol with **95** and **91** octane rating (RON) or **DIN 51626 – 2**, or **E5** for unleaded petrol with **95** and **98** RON).

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol (95/91 RON)

Use unleaded petrol with **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with **91** RON can also be used, although this will result in a slight loss of power.

If, as an emergency measure, you have to fill the tank with petrol with a lower RON to that prescribed, use only moderate engine speeds and light throttle. High engine speed and full throttle can seriously damage the engine! Fill up with petrol with the correct RON as soon as possible.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol (min. 95 RON)

Use unleaded petrol with **95** RON.

If unleaded petrol with **95** RON is not available, you can fill up with petrol with **91** RON as an emergency measure. In this case, use only moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. High engine speed and full throttle can seriously damage the engine! Fill up with petrol with the correct RON as soon as possible.

Petrol with a RON below **91** cannot be used, even as an emergency measure. Risk of seriously damaging the engine!

Unleaded petrol with higher RON

Unleaded petrol with a higher RON to that prescribed can be used without limits.

In vehicles running on prescribed unleaded petrol with **95/91 RON**, there is no notable increase in power or lower fuel consumption when petrol with a RON higher than **95** is used.

In vehicles running on prescribed unleaded petrol with **min. 95 RON**, there is an increase in power and a lower fuel consumption when petrol with a RON higher than **95** is used.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol (98/(95) RON)

Use unleaded petrol with **98** RON. Unleaded petrol with **95** RON can also be used, although this will result in a slight loss of power.

If unleaded petrol with **98** or **95** RON is not available, you can fill up with petrol with **91** RON as an emergency measure. In this case, use only moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. High engine speed and full throttle can seriously damage the engine! Fill up with petrol with the correct RON as soon as possible.

Petrol with a RON below **91** cannot be used, even as an emergency measure. Risk of seriously damaging the engine!

Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol complying with the EN 228 Standard (in Germany, also DIN 51626-1, or E10 for unleaded petrol with 95 RON and 91 RON or DIN 51626 – 2, or E5 for unleaded petrol with 95 and 98 RON) meets all of the ▶

conditions for correct engine running. We do not, therefore, recommend adding additives to the fuel.

CAUTION

- All SEAT vehicles with petrol engines can only run on unleaded petrol. Refuelling just once with leaded petrol disables the exhaust system!
- Use of petrol with a lower RON to that prescribed could damage the engine components.
- Under no circumstances may additives be used that contain metal particles (metal additives), primarily manganese and iron. LRP (lead replacement petrol) fuels containing metal (metal additives) cannot be used. Risk of damage to most engine parts or the exhaust system!
- Fuels marked as containing metal on the garage fuel pump cannot be used. Risk of damage to most engine parts or the exhaust system!
- The use of unsuitable additives in petrol can cause damage to most engine parts or the exhaust system.

Diesel fuel

Your vehicle can only run on **diesel fuel** that complies with the Standard **EN 590** (in Germany, also **DIN 51628**, in Austria also **ÖNORM C 1590**, in Russia also **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004**).

Winter driving – winter-grade diesel

In winter use diesel fuel that complies with the Standard **EN 590** (in Germany, also **DIN 51628**, in Austria also **ÖNORM C 1590**, in Russia also **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004**). “Winter-grade diesel” still performs well at -20 °C (-4 °F).

In countries with other weather conditions, diesel is often available that behaves differently with regards to the temperature. The authorised SEAT dealers and petrol stations in each country will inform you on the normal diesel fuel of the country in question.

Preheating the fuel filter

The vehicle is fitted with a glow plug system for the fuel filter. Therefore, the reliability of the diesel is ensured at ambient temperatures of down to approx. -25 °C (-13 °F).

Fuel additives

Fuel additives, known as “thinners” (petrol or similar substances) should not be mixed with the diesel fuel.

CAUTION

- Even one tankful of diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard could damage engine parts, the fuel system and the exhaust system!
- If fuel different to the prescribed diesel fuel (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake, never start the engine or switch on the ignition! Risk of serious damage to the engine! Contact an authorised SEAT dealer to clean the engine fuel system.
- Water allowed to collect in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.
- Your vehicle is not prepared for use of biofuel (RME) and, therefore, this fuel must not be used for refuelling or driving. The use of biofuel (RME) could cause serious damage to the engine or the fuel system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. when checking and refilling fluids. Therefore, always observe the warnings and follow all general safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.

WARNING

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Risk of scalding! Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.**
- **Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **Engage neutral in vehicles with manual gearbox and move the selector lever to position P in vehicles with automatic gearbox.**
- **Apply the handbrake firmly.**
- **Wait for the engine to cool down.**
- **For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be closed when the vehicle is moving. Therefore, after closing the bonnet always check that it is properly secured.**
- **Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly. Risk of accident!**
- **Keep children away from the engine compartment.**
- **Do not touch hot engine parts. Risk of burns!**
- **Never spill fluids on hot engine compartments. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. antifreeze in coolant).**
- **Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system, especially when working on the battery.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan when the engine is hot. The fan may start running suddenly!**
- **Do not unscrew the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. The cooling system is under pressure!**
- **Protect face, hands and arms from any hot steam or hot coolant released by covering the cap with a large, thick rag when opening the expansion tank.**
- **Do not leave any objects, such as cloths and tools, in the engine compartment.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **When working underneath the vehicle, secure it so that it cannot roll away and support it safely on suitable supports. The hydraulic jack is not sufficient for this purpose. Risk of injuries!**
- **If any tests have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from rotating parts, such as the drive belt, alternator and radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. You should also note the following:**
  - **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
  - **Keep away from moving engine parts when wearing jewellery, loose clothing or long hair. Risk of fatal injuries! All jewellery must be removed, hair tied back and close-fitting clothing worn.**
- **Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary.**
  - **Always disconnect the battery from the onboard network.**
  - **Do not smoke.**
  - **Never work near naked flames.**
  - **Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.**

CAUTION

- When topping up fluids, make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. Otherwise this can cause serious malfunctions or engine damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the release catch. Risk of damage.

For the sake of the environment

Due to the environment-friendly disposal of fluids, the equipment necessary and the knowledge required, fluids must be changed by an authorised SEAT dealer during the service inspections of the vehicle. ▶

Note

- Please contact an authorised SEAT dealer with any doubts regarding fluids.
- Fluids of the correct specifications can be acquired from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet

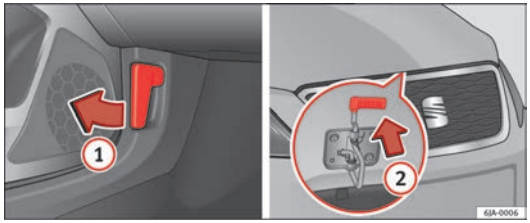

Fig. 116 Releasing bonnet

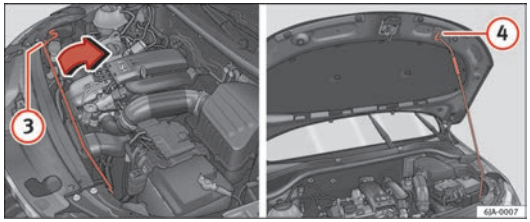

Fig. 117 Securing the bonnet

Opening the bonnet

– Open the front left door.

– Pull the lever (1) ⇒ Fig. 116 under the dash panel in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are not lifted away from the glass. Otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

– Pull the release catch in the direction of the arrow (2) ⇒ Fig. 116 and the bonnet will be released.

– Hold and lift the bonnet.

– Remove the support strut (3) ⇒ Fig. 117 from its fastening in the direction of the arrow and secure the raised bonnet so that the end of the strut hooks onto the opening in the bonnet (4).

Closing the bonnet

– Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the support strut keeping the bonnet open and insert it into its fastening (3).

– Let the bonnet drop from a height of around 20 cm into the catch **Do not press down afterwards!**

– Check that the bonnet is correctly closed.

Engine oil

General notes

The engine is factory-filled with a special multi-grade oil that can be used all year round.

As the use of high quality oil is essential for the correct operation of the engine and its long useful life, when topping up or replacement is necessary use only those oils that conform to the requirements of the VW standards.

The specifications (VW standards) set out in the following page should appear on the container of the service oil; when the container displays the specific standards for petrol and diesel engines together, it means that the oil can be used for both types of engines.

We recommend that the oil change, indicated in the Maintenance Programme, be performed by a Technical Service or a specialised workshop.

The correct oil specifications for your engine are listed in the ⇒ page 177, Oil properties.

Service intervals

Service intervals can be flexible (LongLife service) or fixed (dependent on time/distance travelled).

If the PR code that appears on the back of the "Maintenance Programme" booklet is QG1, this means that your vehicle has the LongLife service programmed. If it has the codes QG0 or QG2 the interval service is dependent on time/distance travelled.

Flexible service intervals (LongLife*)

Special oils and processes have been developed which, depending on the characteristics and individual driving profiles, allow to extend the oil change service (LongLife service intervals).

Because this oil is essential for extending the service intervals, it **must only** be used observing the following indications:

- Avoid mixing it with oil for fixed service intervals.
- Only in exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ⇒ page 177 and LongLife oil is not available, it is permitted to top up (once) with oil for **fixed service intervals** ⇒ page 177 (up to a maximum of 0.5 litres).

Fixed service intervals*

If your vehicle does not have the "LongLife service interval" or it has been disabled (by request), you may use oils for **fixed service intervals**, which also appear in ⇒ page 177, Oil properties. In this case, your vehicle must be serviced after a fixed interval of 1 year/15 000 km (10 000 miles) (whatever comes first) ⇒ Booklet Maintenance Programme.

- In exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ⇒ page 177 and you cannot obtain the oil specified for your vehicle, you can put in a small quantity of oil conforming to the specification ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 (petrol engines) or ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 (diesel engines) (up to 0.5 l).

Vehicles with diesel particulate filter*

The "Maintenance Programme" states whether your vehicle is fitted with a diesel particulate filter.

Only VW 507 00 engine oil, with reduced ash formation, may be used in diesel engines equipped with particulate filter. Using other types of oil will cause a higher soot concentration and reduce the life of the DPF. Therefore:

- Avoid mixing this oil with other engine oils.
- Only in exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ⇒ page 177 and you cannot obtain the oil specified for your vehicle, you can use a small quantity of oil (once) conforming to the VW 506 00, VW 506 01, VW 505 00, VW 505 01 or ACEA B3/ACEA B4 specification. (up to 0.5 l).

Oil properties

Engine type	Specification
Petrol without flexible service interval	VW 502 00/VW 504 00
Petrol with flexible service interval (LongLife)	VW 504 00
Diesel. Engines with no Particulate Filter (DPF)	VW 505 01/VW 506 01/VW 507 00
Diesel. Particulate Filter Engines (DPF). With or without flexible service interval (with and without Longlife)[a)]	VW 507 00

a) Only use recommended oils, otherwise you may damage the engine.

Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed. ■

Checking the engine oil level

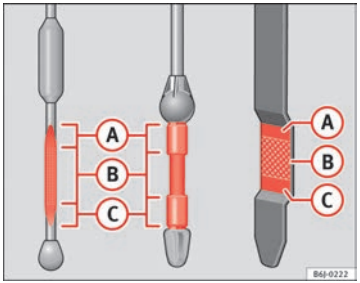

Fig. 118 Engine oil dipsticks

The dipstick shows the engine oil level. ⇒ Fig. 118.

Checking oil level

– Park the vehicle on a level surface and ensure the engine is at operating temperature.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet.

– Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back to the sump and remove the dipstick.

– Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again as far as it will go.

– Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level. ▶

Oil level in area (A)

– Do **not** top up oil.

Oil level in area (B)

– Oil **can** be topped up. After topping up the oil level could be in area (A).

Oil level in area (C)

– Oil **must** be topped up. After topping up the oil level should be in area (B).

It is normal for the engine to consume a certain amount of oil. Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 litres per 1000 km (621 miles). Oil consumption can also be higher for the first 5000 km (3000 miles).

You should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, ideally every time you fill the tank or before setting off on a long trip.

When the engine is working hard, for instance during sustained motorway cruising in summer, when towing a trailer or caravan or climbing on mountain passes, the oil level should preferably be kept within area (A), **but no higher**.

A warning lamp will appear on the instrument panel ⇒ page 67, Engine oil if the oil level is too low. In this case, check the oil level as soon as possible. Top up with the required amount of oil.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never exceed area (A) ⇒ Fig. 118. Risk of damage to the exhaust system!
- If the engine oil cannot be topped up under the given conditions, **do not drive on! Stop the engine** and seek the professional assistance of an Official Service, as this could cause serious damage to the engine. ■

Topping up engine oil

– Check the engine oil level ⇒ page 177, Checking the engine oil level.

– Unscrew the cap from the filler opening.

– Put in the specified grade of oil 0.5 litres at a time ⇒ page 176.

– Check the oil level ⇒ page 177.

– Replace the oil filler cap carefully and push the dipstick all the way in. ■

Changing engine oil

Engine oil must be changed with the frequency indicated in the Maintenance Programme or according to the service interval indicator ⇒ page 57.

CAUTION

Do not mix engine oil with additives. Risk of damage to the engine! Damage caused by these products is not covered by the warranty.

Note

Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil. ■

Coolant

General notes

The cooling system is factory-filled with an anti-freeze product.

Coolant consists of a mixture of water and 40% anti-freeze additive. This mixture gives the required anti-freeze protection at temperatures down to -25 °C (-13 °F) and protects the cooling and heating system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant considerably.

The coolant concentration must not be reduced by adding water, even in warmer seasons or in warm countries. **The concentration of the anti-freeze additive in the coolant must be at least 40 %.**

If greater anti-freeze protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of the anti-freeze additive can be increased, but only up to 60 % (anti-freeze protection down to approx. -40 °C (-40 °F)). Any excess in this proportion would reduce the anti-freeze protection and affect the cooling effect.

Vehicles in countries with a cold climate are supplied with coolant protection down to around -35 °C (-31 °F). The proportion of anti-freeze additive in these countries should always be at least 50 %.

The type of anti-freeze to be used for topping up is indicated on the coolant tank cover ⇒ Fig. 119.

Amount of coolant

Petrol engines	Top-up quantity (in litres)
1.2 l/55 kW MPI	4,2
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	7,0
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	7,0
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	7,0

Diesel engines	Top-up quantity (in litres)
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	6,5

CAUTION

- Anti-freeze that does not correspond to the correct specification may particularly affect corrosion protection considerably.
- Faults caused by corrosion may lead to coolant leaks. Risk of serious engine faults! ■

Checking coolant level

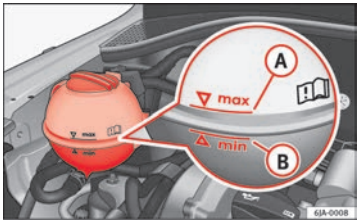

Fig. 119 Engine compartment: Coolant tank

The coolant expansion tank is located in the engine compartment of the vehicle.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet ⇒ page 173.

– Read off the coolant level on coolant expansion tank ⇒ Fig. 119. When the engine is cold, the coolant should be between marks ▶

(B) (min.) and (A) (max.). When the engine is hot, it may be slightly above mark (A) (max.).

The warning lamp (red) in the general instrument panel ⇒ page 68, Coolant level and temperature will appear when the coolant level is too low. However, we recommend checking the coolant level directly in the tank.

Coolant loss

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a **leak**. It is not sufficient merely to top up the coolant. The cooling system should be inspected by an Official Service without delay.

CAUTION

In the event of a fault that causes the engine to overheat, contact an authorised SEAT dealer immediately, as this could damage the engine.

Topping up coolant

– Switch the ignition off.

– Wait for the engine to cool down.

– Cover the cap on the coolant expansion tank ⇒ Fig. 119 with a cloth and **carefully** unscrew the cap.

– Refill the level of coolant.

– Screw the cap on again until it clicks into place.

Do not use a different type of additive if the prescribed anti-freeze additive is not available, in the event of an emergency. In this case, use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible at an Official Service.

Always top up with unused coolant.

Never fill the coolant tank above mark (A) (max.) ⇒ Fig. 119 Excess coolant is forced out of the cooling system through the overpressure valve in the filler cap of the expansion tank when the engine heats up.

WARNING

- **The anti-freeze additive and, therefore, the entire coolant, are a health hazard. Avoid touching the coolant. Coolant fumes are also a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in a safe place out of the reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**
- **If splashed into eyes, rinse immediately with clean water and seek immediate medical advice.**
- **Seek immediate medical advice if the coolant is accidentally ingested.**

CAUTION

If the engine oil cannot be topped up under the given conditions, STOP **do not drive on**. We recommend contacting an authorised SEAT dealer, as this can damage the engine.

Radiator fan

The radiator is driven by an electric motor and controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

After the engine has been stopped and the ignition switched off, the radiator fan may continue running for around 10 minutes.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

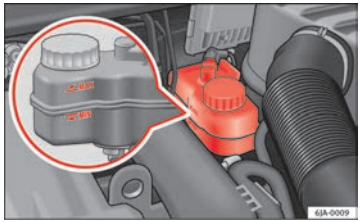

Fig. 120 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment of the vehicle.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet ⇒ page 173.

– Check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ Fig. 120. It should be between the “MIN” and “MAX” marks.

The fluid level drops slightly after a period of time due to automatic compensation for brake pad wear. This is quite normal.

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the “MIN” mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, this will be indicated by the warning lamp in the instrument panel ⇒ page 66, Brake system.

WARNING

If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN mark, do not drive on. Risk of accident! Seek professional help.

Changing brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Therefore, it gradually absorbs moisture from the atmosphere. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. The water content also reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with one of the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114
- FMVSS 116 DOT4

WARNING

Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the brake system for too long. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle.

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the vehicle paintwork.

Windscreen washer

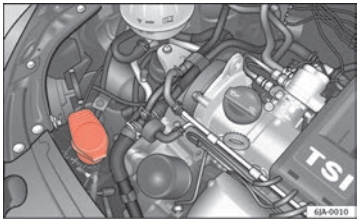

Fig. 121 Engine compartment: Windscreen washer container

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and the headlight washer system. The container is located in the engine compartment.

The **container capacity** is approx. 3.5 litres and, in vehicles with windscreen washer system, approx. 5.4 litres[1].

Plain water on its own is not enough to clean the glass and the headlights properly. We therefore recommend using clean water with a glass cleaning product to eliminate any stubborn dirt **(with an anti-freeze additive in winter)**.

Although your vehicle has heated windscreen washer jets, anti-freeze should always be added to the water in winter.

Ethanol can be used where glass cleaner with anti-freeze is unavailable. The concentration of ethanol must be no greater than 15 %. However, remember that anti-freeze in this proportion only protects down to -5 °C (23 °F).

[1] Valid only for certain countries. 5.4 litres for both versions.

CAUTION

- Never mix the windscreen washing water with anti-freeze used for the cooling system or other additives.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer system, only mix a detergent that does not damage polycarbonates with the water.

Note

On topping up the fluid, do not move the filter on the container opening, as this could contaminate the fluid pipes and, therefore, lead to a windscreen washer malfunction. ■

Battery

Introduction

Warning symbols on the battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear safety glasses!
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Always wear gloves and hearing protection!
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away when working on the battery!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge!
	Keep children away from the battery!

▶

Incorrect handling of the vehicle battery could lead to damage. We therefore recommend all work on the vehicle battery be performed by an authorised SEAT dealer.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system. Therefore, always observe the warnings and follow all general safety precautions.

WARNING

- **Battery acid is very corrosive, therefore, the battery must be handled with the utmost care. Wear protective gloves and protect your eyes and skin when handling batteries. The corrosive fumes in the air irritate and inflame the respiratory tract and cause conjunctivitis. It corrodes tooth enamel and causes deep, difficult-to-heal wounds when in contact with the skin. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin disease (inflammation, ulcers and fissures). When in contact with water, acids dilute and develop a great deal of heat.**
- **Do not tilt the battery, as acid could leak out of the vapour vents. Protect your eyes with glasses or a protective helmet! Risk of blindness! If acid should splash into the eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately for several minutes using clean water. Then seek medical care immediately.**
- **Neutralize any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with soap solution as quickly as possible and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.**
- **Keep children away from the battery.**
- **Hydrogen is released and a highly explosive mixture of gases is generated when the battery is under charge. Sparks when disconnecting or releasing cable terminals with the ignition switched on could also cause an explosion.**
- **A short circuit is produced if the battery terminals are bridged, e.g. using metal objects, cables, etc. Possible consequences of a short circuit: melting of lead plates, battery explosion and fire, splashing acid.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **The following is forbidden while working on the battery: fire and open flames, smoking and activities that could produce sparks. Avoid causing sparks when handling cables or electrical apparatus. Risk of injury in the event of large sparks.**
- **Before working on the electrical system, you must switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the cable from the negative terminal (-) of the battery. To change a bulb, simply switch off the corresponding light.**
- **Never charge a frozen or thawed out battery. Risk of explosion and acid burns! Replace a frozen battery.**
- **Never use the jump leads on batteries in which the electrolyte level is too low. Risk of explosion and acid burns.**
- **Never use a damaged battery. Risk of explosion! Replace a damaged battery immediately.**

CAUTION

- Never disconnect the battery when the ignition is switched on, as the electrical system (electronic components) of the vehicle could be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle electrical system, disconnect its negative terminal (-) first. Only then may the positive terminal (+) be disconnected.
- When connecting the battery, connect the positive terminal (+) first. Only then may the negative terminal (-) be connected. The battery cables must never be connected to the wrong battery terminals. Risk of burning the electrical installation.
- Make sure the battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork. Risk of paintwork damage.
- Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight to protect it from ultraviolet radiation. ▶

- If the vehicle is not used for 3 or 4 weeks, the battery could run flat. This is because some components use electricity even in standby mode (e.g. control units). Prevent the battery from running flat by disconnecting its negative terminal or leave it charging at a low current.
- If you frequently use the vehicle for short trips, the battery may not fully charge and could run flat.

For the sake of the environment

A flat battery is particularly harmful waste for the environment. It must therefore be disposed of according to current local law.

Note

Replace a battery once it is older than 5 years. ■

Battery cover

Fig. 122 Battery: Opening the cover

The battery is located beneath a plastic cover in the engine compartment.

– Open the battery cover in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 122.

– The positive terminal (+) of the battery is connected in reverse order. ■

Checking battery acid level

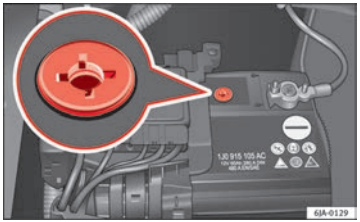

Fig. 123 Battery: Acid level indicator

We recommend you have the acid level regularly checked at an official technical service, particularly in the following cases.

- At high outside temperatures.
- On long daily trips.
- Whenever the vehicle is loaded ⇒ page 185, Charging the battery.

In vehicles equipped with a battery with colour indicator, the so-called magic eye ⇒ Fig. 123 changes colour to indicate the acid level.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock the indicator before checking the acid level.

- Black – the acid level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow – acid level too low, battery must be changed. ▶

Note

- The battery acid level is also regularly checked during servicing at authorised SEAT dealers.
- The acid level on “AGM” vehicle batteries cannot be checked for technical reasons.
- Vehicles equipped with the “START-STOP” system include a battery control unit to control the battery level for repeat engine starting.

Winter service

At low temperatures the battery provides only a fraction of the starting power it has at normal temperatures.

A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures slightly below to 0 °C (32 °F).

We therefore recommend you have the battery checked and, if necessary, charged at an official SEAT technical service before the start of winter.

Charging the battery

A fully-charged battery is essential for reliable starting.

– Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.

– For “fast-charging” only: disconnect both battery connection cables (first the “negative” terminal and then the “positive”).

– Connect the charger cables to the battery terminals (red = “positive”, black = “negative”).

– Plug in the battery charger and switch on.

– After charging the battery: Switch off the battery charger and disconnect the cable.

– Remove the charger cables.

– If necessary, reconnect both battery cables to the battery (first the “positive” cable, then the “negative” cable).

When charging with a low current (e.g. with a **small battery charger**), the battery does not have to be disconnected. **The instructions of the battery charger manufacturer must be followed.**

Use a current equivalent to or lower than 0.1 of the battery capacity to fully charge the battery.

Before **“fast-charging”** the battery however, both battery cables must be disconnected.

“Fast-charging” a battery is **dangerous** and requires a battery charger and special knowledge. Fast charges should be performed by an official technical service.

The battery caps should not be opened while the battery is being charged.

CAUTION

In vehicles fitted with the “START-STOP” system, the charger cable cannot be directly connected to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery but must be attached to the engine earthing point ⇒ page 207.

Disconnecting and connecting the battery

The following functions will either be inoperative or will not work properly after disconnecting and reconnecting the battery:

Function	Installation
Setting the clock	⇒ page 58
The multifunction display data is deleted	⇒ page 59

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by an authorised SEAT dealer to guarantee the correct working order of all electrical systems.

Changing the battery

A replacement battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current rating and size as the original. The appropriate types of battery can be acquired from authorised SEAT dealers.

We recommend having the battery changed by an authorised SEAT dealer, where the new battery will be correctly installed and the original disposed of in line with regulations.

Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment

When heavily-charging a battery, the programme selected by the electrical system control unit prevents the battery from automatically discharging. This may result in the following:

- Increase in idling speed so that the alternator can supply more current to the electrical system.
- The performance of certain electrical components could be limited or some may switch off temporarily, e.g. the heated seats, the heated rear window, the 12V power socket.

Note

Despite any measures taken by the control unit, the battery could drain. e.g. with the engine is switched off, the key is turned in the ignition for a long period or the side lights or parking lights are switched on. The switching off of certain electrical components does not impair driving comfort and the driver will often not even realise.

Wheels and tyres

Wheels

Introduction

WARNING

- **During the first 500 km (300 miles), new tyres do not give maximum grip, therefore you should drive carefully. Risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres. Risk of accident!**
- **Only use wheels and tyres that been authorised by SEAT or your vehicle model. Failure to do so could impair road safety. Risk of accident!**
- **Never exceed the maximum speed permitted for your tyres. Risk of accident due to tyre damage and loss of vehicle control.**
- **Under-inflated tyres are submitted to greater rolling resistance. This means that they can overheat at high speeds. This can cause tread separation and even tyre blow-out.**
- **For driving safety, tyres should be replaced at least in pairs according to the axle and not individually. The tyres with the deepest tread should always be used on the front wheels.**
- **Never fit used tyres of an unknown age or prior use.**
- **Tyres must be immediately changed at the very latest when they have worn down to the tread wear indicators.**
- **Worn tyres reduce the necessary grip at high speeds on damp surfaces. This could lead to “aquaplaning” (uncontrolled vehicle movement – “skidding” on damp surfaces).**
- **Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately.**

WARNING (Continued)

- **Do not use summer or winter tyres that are more than 6 or 4 years old respectively.**
- **Wheel bolts should be clean and screw easily. However, they must never be treated with grease or oil.**
- **If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is moving. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too high, the bolts and threads could be damaged, leading to the permanent deforming of the rim support surfaces.**
- **Incorrectly handled wheel bolts could lead to a wheel coming loose while the vehicle is moving. Risk of accident!**
- **The local regulations in force must be taken into account when using child seats.**

CAUTION

- Where a spare wheel that is not compatible with the wheels fitted is used, follow the instructions ⇒ page 190.
- The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts on steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- Protect your tyres from coming into contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace any lost valve caps immediately.

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption. ▶

Note

- We recommend having all work on tyres and wheels carried out by an authorised SEAT dealer.
- We recommend using wheels, tyres, hub caps and snow chains from the SEAT Original Accessories programme.

Tyre useful life

Fig. 124 Side view of tyres with tread wear indicators

Tread wear indicator

The base of the side of the original tyres on your vehicle show 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇒ Fig. 124. The position of these indicators is given on the tyre sidewalls by the letters “TWI”, triangular symbols or other symbols.

The useful life of the tyres depends primarily on the following factors:

Tyre pressure values

Under-inflation or over-inflation will considerably reduce the useful life of the tyres and impair the vehicle's handling. Therefore, check the tyre pressure, including the spare wheel, at least once a month and before any long journey.

Inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are listed on a sticker inside the fuel tank flap. The pressures for **winter tyres** are 20 kPa (0.2 bar) above the summer values.

Always check the pressure when the tyre is cold. Do not reduce over-pressure in warm tyres. The tyre pressures must be altered to suit notable changes in the load being carried.

Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. Various factors encountered when driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in vibration of the steering wheel.

The wheel must be rebalanced if a new tyre is fitted or if a tyre is repaired.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect front or rear wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, frequently on one side, and also impairs vehicle safety. If tyre wear is very irregular, contact an Official Service.

Tyre damage

To avoid damage to tyres and wheels, only drive over kerbs or similar obstacles slowly and at a right angle if possible.

Check tyres and wheels regularly for damage (punctures, cracks, blisters, deformities, etc.). Remove any foreign objects embedded in outside of the treads.

Unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. **Reduce speed immediately and stop if you suspect that damage may have occurred!** Check the tyres for damage (blisters, cracks, etc.). If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest Official Service and have the vehicle inspected. ■

Handling wheels and tyres

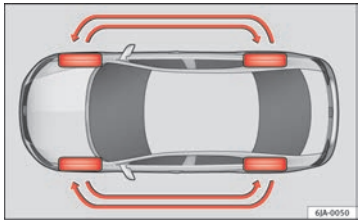

Fig. 125 Changing wheels around

Changing wheels around

If the wear is visibly greater on the front tyres, they should be exchanged for the rear tyres as shown in the diagram ⇒ Fig. 125. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

To ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres and maintain their optimum useful life, they should be changed around every 10 000 km (6000 miles).

Storing tyres

Mark tyres when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to install them correctly when you replace them.

When removed, the wheels and/or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark location. Store tyres in a vertical position if they are not fitted on wheel rims. ■

Replacing tyres and wheels

All four wheels must be fitted only with tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern.

The correct tyre/wheel combinations specified for your vehicle are listed in its registration documentation.

Understanding the tyre designations makes it easier to choose the correct tyres. The tyre designation is marked on the sidewall. For example.

195/55 R 15 85 H

This contains the following information:

195	Tyre width in mm
55	Height/width ratio in %
R	Tyre construction – **R**adial
15	Rim diameter in inches
85	Load rating code
H	Speed rating code letter

The tyres are subject to the following **maximum speed limits**:

Speed rating code letter	Maximum speed limit
Q	160 km/h (168 mph)
R	170 km/h (168 mph)
S	180 km/h (168 mph)
T	190 km/h (168 mph)
U	200 km/h (168 mph)
H	210 km/h (168 mph)
V	240 km/h (168 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)

The **manufacturing date** is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the *inner* side of the wheel).

DOT ... 27 12...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 27th week of 2012.

Follow the instructions ⇒ page 190 if you only have a temporary spare wheel. ■

Tyres with directional tread pattern

The direction of rotation is indicated by the **arrows on the tyre sidewall**. The direction of rotation indicated must be respected. This guarantees optimum grip and helps avoid excessive noise, wear and aquaplaning.

In the event of a flat tyre, a spare wheel with an undetermined tread pattern or an opposite tread pattern must be used and you must drive carefully, as in these cases the tyres no longer offer maximum performance. ■

Spare wheel

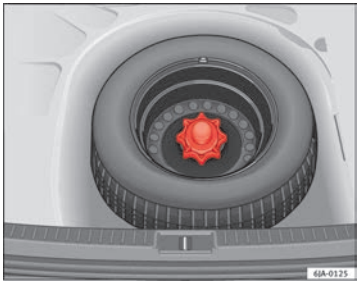

Fig. 126 Luggage compartment: spare wheel

The spare wheel is housed in a well under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is secured by a special bolt ⇒ Fig. 126.

Take out the tool box before removing the spare wheel.

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel must be checked (preferably whenever the tyre pressure is checked – see sticker on fuel tank flap ⇒ page 188) to ensure the spare wheel remains ready for use.

If the spare wheel is not the same size or design as the tyres that are mounted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or tyres with direction tread), only use the spare tyre for a short period of time in the event of breakdown and drive with the corresponding care ⇒ ⚠.

It must be replaced as soon as possible for a wheel with a normal size and finish.

Temporary spare wheel

If the vehicle is equipped with a temporary spare wheel, there will be a warning sign on the rim of the wheel. ▶

Follow the instructions below when driving with this wheel fitted.

- After fitting the wheel, the warning sign must not be covered.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare wheel and take great care during the trip. Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- The tyre pressure is the same as that of the standard tyres.
- Only use this spare wheel to reach the nearest Official Service, as it is not designed for permanent use.

WARNING

- **Under no circumstances must damaged spare wheels be used.**
- **If the spare wheel is different in size or design to the tyres currently fitted, never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**

CAUTION

Follow the instructions given on the temporary spare wheel label.

Note

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel must always correspond to the highest pressure prescribed for the model of vehicle in question. ■

Wheel trim

Removing

– Place the hook from the vehicle tool kit on the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.

– Insert the box spanner through the hook, supporting it on the tyre and remove the wheel trim.

Fitting

– First press the wheel trim onto the wheel at the cut out designed for the valve. Then press the wheel trim on both sides in the direction of the valve so that it fits correctly in place around all the perimeter.

CAUTION

- Press down by hand, do not hit the wheel trim! Knocking it sharply, particularly at points where the wheel trim has not yet been inserted, could result in damage to the wheel trim guiding and centring elements.
- Before fitting the trim on a steel alloy wheel attached with an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure the bolt is in the hole in the valve area ⇒ page 202, Anti-theft wheel bolts.
- Where **trim** is fitted at a later date, ensure enough air inflow is guaranteed in order to cool the brake system. ■

Wheel bolt caps

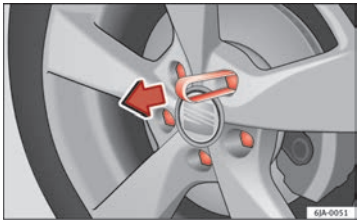

Fig. 127 Pull off the wheel bolt cap ▶

Removing

– Insert the plastic clip into the cap until the inner retaining notches on the clips touch the collar of the cap and then remove ⇒ Fig. 127.

Fitting

– Insert the caps as far as they will go over the wheel bolts.

The wheel bolt caps are stored in a box on the spare wheel or in the spare wheel well. ■

Tyre pressure

Fig. 128 Tyre pressure setting switch

The tyre pressure monitoring system uses ABS sensors to compare the revolutions and the circumference of each wheel. Should the circumference of any wheel change, the warning lamp (!) in the general instrument panel ⇒ page 72 will light up and an audible warning will be heard.

Tyre circumference may change if:

- Tyre pressure is too low
- Tyre structure is damaged
- Vehicle load not evenly distributed
- Wheels on one axle are subjected to greater load, (e.g. driving with trailer, uphill, downhill)
- Snow chains are fitted
- The temporary spare wheel is fitted
- One wheel on the axle has been changed

Basic system settings

Should the tyre pressure change or if one or more wheels are changed or the position of the wheel on the vehicle is changed, e.g. changing round the front and rear wheels, or where a warning lamp lights up when driving, the system must be adjusted as follows:

- Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressures ⇒ page 188.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Hold the SET (!) ⇒ Fig. 128 button down for at least 2 seconds. The warning lamp (!) will light up when the button is pressed. The system memory is also deleted and a new calibration system will begin, which is indicated by an audible warning before the warning lamp switches off (!).
- If the warning lamp (!) remains lit and does not switch off, not even once the basic setting process is complete, this indicates a fault in the system. Contact an Official Service.

The warning lamp (!) lights up

If the pressure on at least one tyre is significantly lower than the pressure set by the driver, the warning lamp (!) ⇒ ⚠ will light up.

The warning lamp (!) flashes

If the warning lamp flashes, there is a fault in the system. Contact a specialised service to have it fixed. ▶

WARNING

- **If the warning lamp (!) lights up, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. Stop and check the tyres and their pressure as soon as possible.**
- **Under certain conditions (e.g. sporty driving style, driving on loose surfaces or in the winter) the warning lamp (!) may take a while to light up or may remain switched off.**
- **Despite the tyre pressure monitoring system, the driver remains responsible for maintaining the correct tyre pressure. You must therefore check the tyre pressure often.**

Note

- The tyre pressure monitoring system is not a replacement for regularly checking the tyre pressure, as it is unable to recognise an even drop in pressure.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system is unable to warn of a sudden drop in tyre pressure, e.g. a puncture. In this case, try to stop the vehicle carefully with no severe braking or steering manoeuvres.
- To ensure the tyre pressure monitoring system works correctly, the basic setting must be performed every 10 000 km (6000 miles) or once a year. ■

Wheel bolts

The **wheel bolts** are matched to the rims. When installing different wheels, e.g. to fit light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres, it is important to use the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads. The is essential for the secure fit of the wheels and for the proper function of the brake system. ■

Winter tyres

Winter tyres will significantly improve handling of the vehicle in winter road conditions. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip at temperatures below 7 °C (45 °F), on ice and snow. This applies particularly to vehicles equipped with **wide section tyres** or **high speed tyres** (code letters H or V on the sidewall).

In order to preserve the performance of the vehicle as much as possible, winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels, the minimum depth of the tread must be 4 mm and the maximum age must be 4 years.

You can use winter tyres of a lower speed rating if the maximum speed limit of these tyres will not be exceeded, even if the maximum speed limit for the vehicle is higher.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again in time, as they give better handling on roads free of snow and ice and at temperatures over 7 °C (45 °F). Summer tyres have a shorter braking distance, produce less rolling noise and do not wear down as quickly. They also reduce fuel consumption. ■

Snow chains

Snow chains must only be used on the front wheels.

In winter road conditions, snow chains not only help to improve grip but also improve the braking capacity.

For technical reasons snow chains may only be used on tyres with the following wheel rim/tyre combinations. ▶

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
5J x 14[a)]	35 mm	175/70
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	185/60
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	195/55

a) Only use snow chains with fine-pitch links and lock no greater than **9 mm**.

b) Only use snow chains with fine-pitch links and lock no greater than **13 mm**.

Remove the **wheel trims** before fitting snow chains.

CAUTION

Chains must be removed when roads are free of snow. Otherwise they will impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.

Accessories, modifications and spare parts

General notes

If you wish to retrofit accessories in the vehicle, or if a part of the vehicle has been replaced by a new part or technical modifications are required, the following instructions must be taken into account.

- **Before** purchasing accessories or spare parts and **before** making technical modifications, always request advice from an Authorised SEAT dealer ⇒ ⚠.
- In the event that technical modifications are carried out on the vehicle, the instructions and regulations specified by the company, SEAT, must be observed.

No damage will be caused to the vehicle if the established procedures are respected, which guarantees safe driving and operation. After the modifications are carried out, the vehicle will comply with the restrictions and regulations of the highway code. More information can be obtained at an Authorised SEAT dealer, where all jobs required can be carried out appropriately.

Vehicle improvements and refurbishment

The owner must store the technical documents regarding the modifications carried out on the vehicle to be handed over to those responsible for the processing of the end-of-life vehicle. This ensures end-of-life processing of the vehicle, while protecting the environment.

Work done on the electrical components and software can cause disruption in operations. Due to the interconnection of electronic components, this disruption can also negatively influence systems that are not directly affected. This can adversely affect reliability of the vehicle, and can produce excessive wear of the parts.

Damage caused by technical modifications that are not made with the consent of SEAT will be excluded from the warranty – see warranty certificate.

⚠ WARNING

- **Jobs or modifications unduly carried out on your vehicle can cause disruption to operations - Risk of accident!**
- **We recommend that you use only expressly authorised SEAT Original Accessories and ® SEAT Original Spare Parts for your vehicle. The reliability, safety and compatibility with your vehicle of SEAT Original Accessories and ® SEAT Original Spare Parts has been checked.**
- **Despite the continuous observation of the market, we cannot judge nor guarantee the suitability of other products for your vehicle, be they authorised products or products approved by a state testing facility.**

Note

SEAT Original Accessories and ® SEAT Original Spare Parts can be purchased at authorised SEAT dealers where the purchased parts can also be fitted.

Modifications and effects of the airbag system

In the adjustment and modification, respect the SEAT directive.

Modifications and corrections of the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof or bodywork must be carried out at authorised SEAT workshops. Components of the airbag system can be found in these parts of the vehicle.

WARNING

- **Airbag modules must never be repaired. They must be replaced.**
- **Never fit components of the airbag system removed from old vehicles or those originating from a recycling process in the vehicle.**
- **The modification of the suspension of the vehicle wheels, including the use of non-permitted combinations of tyres and rims can alter the operation of the airbag system and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident.**
- **During all jobs on the airbag system, in addition to the removal and fitting of parts of the system in the course of other repair jobs, parts of the airbag system can be damaged. Therefore in the event of an accident, this may cause the airbags to activate incorrectly or not activate al all.**

Self-help

First-aid kit and warning triangle

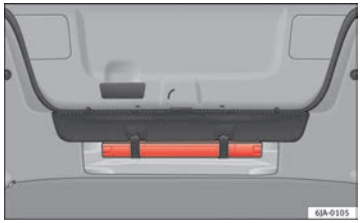

Fig. 129 Location of warning triangle

The warning triangle, measuring max. 436 x 45 x 32 mm, can be secured to the lining on the rear of the luggage compartment with rubber straps ⇒ Fig. 129.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and fire extinguisher must be properly secured so that they are not catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. Risk of injury.

Note

- Observe the expiry date of the contents of the first aid kit.
- We recommend you use the first-aid kit and the warning triangle from the SEAT Original Accessories programme available in authorised SEAT dealers.

Fire extinguisher

Read the instructions given on the fire extinguisher carefully.

The fire extinguisher must be checked once a year by an authorised person (take the applicable legal regulations into account).

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must be properly secured so that it is not catapulted through the vehicle, causing injuries, during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with local legal requirements.
- Observe the expiry date of the fire extinguisher. The fire extinguisher may not work properly if used after the expiry date.

Vehicle tool kit*

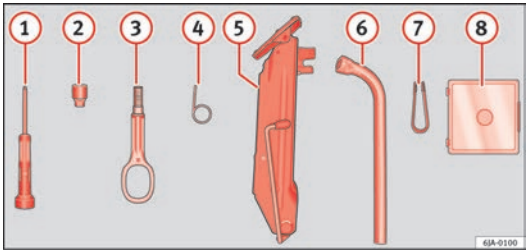

Fig. 130 Vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit and the jack are stored in a box on the spare wheel or in the spare wheel well. There is also enough space for the towing bracket ball coupling. The box is strapped to the spare wheel with tape.

The vehicle tool kit includes the following parts (depending on equipment):

1. Screwdriver
2. Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3. Towline anchorage
4. Wire hook for removing hub caps
5. Jack
6. Box spanner for wheel bolts
7. Clip for wheel bolt cover
8. Spare set of bulbs

Before stowing the jack again, screw down the arm as far as it will go.

WARNING

- **The factory-supplied jack is only designed for changing wheels on this model of vehicle. On no account attempt to use it for lighting heavier vehicles or other loads. Risk of injury!**
- **Make sure that the vehicle tools are stored properly in the luggage compartment.**

Note

Make sure the box always remains strapped to the spare wheel with tape. ■

Changing a wheel

Introduction

WARNING

- **If you have a puncture in moving traffic, switch on the hazard warning lights and place the warning triangle at the obligatory distance. Observe the applicable local legal regulations. This is for your own safety and that of other road users.**
- **If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle well away from moving traffic. Choose a location that is as level and solid as possible.**
- **If you have to change the tyre on a gradient, block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed by placing a stone or similar object under it to prevent the vehicle from rolling away unexpectedly.**
- **If the vehicle has been fitted with tyres or alloys that are different to those fitted in manufacture, the instructions ⇒ page 189, Replacing tyres and wheels must be followed.** ▶

WARNING (Continued)

- **Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.**
- **Never place parts of your body, e.g. arms and legs, underneath the vehicle when supported only by the jack.**
- **Secure the base of the jack with suitable supports so that it cannot slip. The jack could slide if the ground below it is soft and slippery and the vehicle could slip off it. Therefore, place the jack on a firm surface or use a large, stable base. On a slippery surface, e.g. tiles, use a non-slip base such as a rubber mat.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised. Risk of injury.**
- **The jack should only be used in the correct jacking points.**

CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts on steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the anti-theft wheel bolt is overly tightened, this could damage the bolt and the adapter

Note

- The set of anti-theft wheel bolts or the adapter are available from authorised SEAT dealers.
- Please observe the relevant local legal regulations when changing the wheel. ■

Preparation work

Some preparation is required before changing a wheel:

– If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle as far away as possible from moving traffic. The surface must be **horizontal**.

– **All vehicle occupants should leave the vehicle**. Vehicle occupants should waiting in a safe place, e.g. behind the roadside crash barrier) while the wheel is being changed.

– Switch off the ignition and engage **neutral** or move the **selector lever** on the automatic gearbox **to position P**.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– If towing a trailer, unhitch it.

– Take the **vehicle tool kit** ⇒ page 198 and the **spare wheel** ⇒ page 198 out of the luggage compartment. ■

Changing a wheel

If possible, change the wheel on a level surface.

– Pull off the hub cap ⇒ page 191 or the wheel bolt covers ⇒ page 191.

– First loosen the anti-theft wheel bolts and then the other wheel bolts ⇒ page 200.

– Raise the vehicle until the wheel to be changed is no longer touching the ground ⇒ page 201.

– Remove the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).

– Take off the wheel.

– Lift the spare wheel into position and tighten the wheel bolts lightly. ▶

– Lower the vehicle.

– Tighten the wheel bolts firmly in diagonal sequence with the box spanner and then the anti-theft wheel bolt ⇒ page 200.

– Replace the hub cap and/or the bolt covers.

Note

- All bolts must be clean and turn easily.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- Note the direction of rotation when putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern ⇒ page 187. ■

After changing a wheel

Tasks that must be carried out after changing a wheel.

– Place the wheel with the defective tyre in the spare wheel well and secure it using a special bolt ⇒ page 190.

– Put the vehicle tools back in their storage location.

– **Check the tyre pressure** of the newly fitted spare wheel as soon as possible.

– Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** as soon as possible with a torque wrench.

– Have the flat tyre replaced or ask an Official Service about the possibility of repair.

[1] The corresponding adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ⇒ page 202.

Note

- If you notice that the wheel bolts are rusty and difficult to turn when changing a wheel, they must be replaced before having the tightening torque checked.
- Drive carefully and at moderate speeds until the tightening torque of the wheel bolts has been checked. ■

Loosening and tightening wheel bolts

Fig. 131 Changing a wheel: Loosening wheel bolts

Loosening wheel bolts

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1].

– Grip the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt about **one** turn anti-clockwise ⇒ Fig. 131.

Tightening wheel bolts

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1]. ▶

– Grip the box spanner as close to the end as possible and tighten the bolt firmly by turning clockwise.

WARNING

The wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (about one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack. Risk of accident!

Note

If the wheel bolt is very tight, it may be possible to loosen it by pushing down the end of the box spanner carefully with your **foot**. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

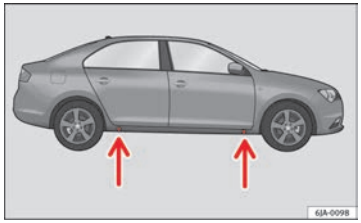

Fig. 132 Changing a wheel: Jacking points

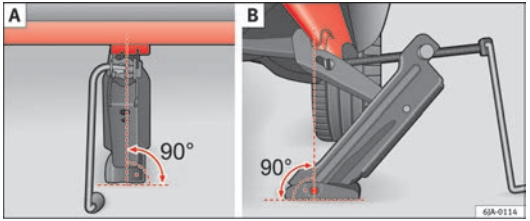

Fig. 133 Fitting the jack

To place the jack, locate the jacking point under the door sill closest to the wheel to be changed ⇒ Fig. 132. The jacking point is directly underneath the stamp on the door sill.

– Turn the crank handle on the jack to wind it up under the jacking point until its claw is directly below the jacking point of the door sill.

– Adjust the jack so that its claw surrounds the jacking point on the door sill ⇒ Fig. 133 - B underneath the stamp on the door sill.

– Make sure that the base of the jack is entirely supported on a flat surface and that it is vertical ⇒ Fig. 133 to the point where the claw surrounds the jacking point on the door sill.

– Continue to wind up the jack using the crank handle until the defective wheel is clear off the ground.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

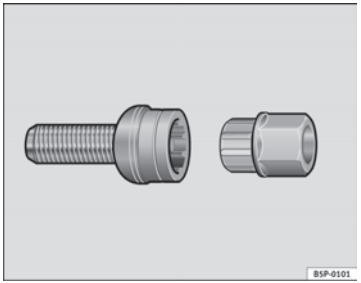

Fig. 134 Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

Vehicles fitted with anti-theft wheel bolts (one bolt per wheel) can only be loosened or tightened using a factory-supplied adapter.

– Pull off the hub cap or bolt cover.

– Insert the adapter (B) ⇒ Fig. 134 with its toothed side as far as it will go on the interior toothing of the anti-theft wheel bolt (A) so that only the outer hexagonal is protruding.

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over adapter (B).

– Loosen or firmly tighten the wheel bolt ⇒ page 200.

– After removing the adapter, replace the hub cap or the anti-theft wheel bolt cover.

– Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** as soon as possible with a torque wrench.

Note down the code number stamped on the front of the adapter or on the front of the anti-theft wheel bolt. You will need this number to obtain a spare adapter from the SEAT Original Accessories.

We recommend you always carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle. It should be stored in the vehicle tool kit. ■

Tyre repair kit*

Introduction

The tyre repair kit is stored in a box under the carpet in the luggage compartment.

The tyre repair kit will reliably seal tyres damaged by foreign bodies, provided that cuts or punctures are no larger than approx. 4 mm in diameter. Do not remove the foreign bodies, e.g. bolts or nails, from the tyre!

The tyre must be repaired immediately.

The repair made using the tyre repair kit **under no circumstances replaces** permanent tyre repair and should only be used to drive to the nearest Official Service.

The tyre repair kit must not be used:

- If the wheel rim has been damaged
- At outside temperatures below -20 °C (-4 °F)
- On cuts or punctures larger than 4 mm
- If the sidewall of the wheel has been damaged
- If you have been driving with very low tyre pressure or a completely flat tyre
- If the best-before date on the air can has expired ▶

WARNING

- **If you have a puncture in moving traffic, switch on the hazard warning lights and place the warning triangle at the obligatory distance. Observe the applicable local legal regulations. This is for your own safety and that of other road users.**
- **If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle well away from moving traffic. Choose a location that is as level and solid as possible.**
- **A tyre filled with sealant does not have the same performance properties as a conventional tyre.**
- **Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**
- **Check the tyre pressure after 10 minutes of driving!**
- **The sealant is harmful to health and must be immediately rinsed from affected skin.**

For the sake of the environment

Used or out-of-date sealant must be disposed of in line with environmental protection regulations.

Note

- Observe the instructions for use provided by the tyre repair kit manufacturer.
- A new can of sealant can be acquired from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories.
- Change the tyre repaired using the tyre repair kit as soon as possible or ask an Official Service about the possibility of repair.

Tyre repair kit components

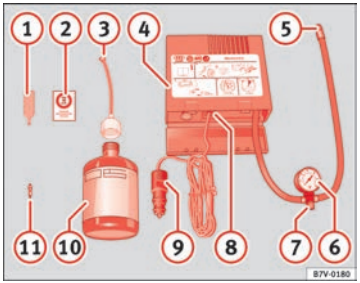

Fig. 135 Tyre repair kit components

The tyre repair kit includes the following parts:

1. An adapter to fit and remove the valve
2. Sticker indicating the speed: “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph”
3. Flexible filling hose with cap
4. Compressor
5. Flexible tyre inflating hose
6. Tyre pressure gauge
7. Air release screw
8. ON/OFF button
9. 12 Volt cable connector ⇒ page 119
10. Can of sealant
11. Spare valve

The valve extractor (1) ⇒ Fig. 135 has a slot in its lower end that fits onto the valve insert. This is used to remove the valve insert from the tyre and to replace it. This is also valid for the spare valve insert (11).

Before using the tyre repair kit

The following jobs must be performed before using the tyre repair kit:

– If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle well away from moving traffic. Stop on flat, solid ground.

– All vehicle occupants should **leave the vehicle**. Vehicle occupants should waiting in a safe place, e.g. behind the roadside crash barrier) while the wheel is being changed.

– Switch off the ignition and engage **neutral** or move the **selector lever** on the automatic gearbox **to position P**.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– Check whether the tyre can be repaired using the tyre repair kit ⇒ page 202.

– If towing a trailer, unhitch it.

– Take the **tyre repair kit** out of the luggage compartment.

– Fix the sticker (2) ⇒ Fig. 135 ⇒ page 203 onto the dash panel where the driver will see it.

– Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. bolts or nails, from the tyre.

– Unscrew the tyre valve cap.

– Using the valve extractor (1), unscrew the valve insert and place it onto a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.) ■

Filling and inflating the tyre

Filling the tyre

– Shake the tyre sealant can (10) ⇒ Fig. 135 ⇒ page 203 thoroughly several times.

– Attach the flexible filling hose (3) onto the can (10). The foil sealing the can will be automatically pierced.

– Remove the cap from the flexible filling hose (3) and insert the open end as far as it will go into the tyre valve.

– Hold the can (10) upside down and fill the complete contents of the can into the tyre.

– Remove the empty can from the tyre.

– Screw the valve insert back into the tyre valve using the valve extractor (1).

Inflating the tyre

– Screw the tyre filling hose (5) ⇒ Fig. 135 ⇒ page 203 firmly onto the tyre valve.

– Make sure that the bleed screw (7) is closed.

– Start the vehicle engine and leave it running.

– Plug the connector (9) into the 12-volt power socket.

– Turn the air compressor on with the switch (8).

– Leave the air compressor running until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 - 2.5 bar. Max. operating time for the compressor is 8 minutes ⇒ ! ▶

– Switch the compressor off.

– When an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar cannot be reached, unscrew the flexible pipe (5) from the tyre valve.

– Drive the vehicle approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards, so that the sealant can “spread evenly” in the tyre.

– Screw the flexible hose from the air compressor (5) back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.

– If the pressure is still lower than specified, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be repaired using the tyre sealant kit ⇒ ⚠.

– Switch the compressor off.

– Unscrew the flexible hose (5) from the tyre valve.

When a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is reached then you can continue driving at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre pressure after 10 minutes of driving ⇒ page 205.

WARNING

- **The flexible tyre filling hose and the air compressor may heat up during the filling process. Risk of injury!**
- **Do not place the hot flexible tyre filling hose or hot air compressor on top of flammable materials. Risk of fire!**
- **If the tyre cannot be inflated to a minimum pressure of 2.0 bar then the tyre is too badly damaged. The sealing product is unable to seal the tyre STOP. Do not drive on and obtain professional assistance.**

CAUTION

Do not use the air compressor for longer than 8 minutes at a time. Risk of overheating! Before using the air compressor again, leave it to cool down for several minutes. ■

Check after 10 minutes of driving

Check the tyre pressure after 10 minutes of driving!

If the tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar:

– STOP **Do not drive on!** The tyre cannot be sufficiently filled using the tyre repair kit.

– See professional assistance.

If the tyre pressure is over 1.3 bar:

– Correct the tyre pressure again to the correct value (see inside of the fuel tank flap).

– Carefully resume your journey to the nearest specialised workshop at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). ■

Jump-starting

Introduction

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required. ▶

Both batteries must be rated at 12 Volts. The **capacity** (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current and must be fitted with insulated battery clamps. Refer to the instructions given by the manufacturer.

Positive cable – usually red

Negative cable – usually black

WARNING

- **When it is discharged, a battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C (32 °F). A frozen battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads. Risk of explosion!**
- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 173.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. Additionally, the jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle. Risk of short circuit!**
- **Do not connect the negative lead to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. In the event of sparks when starting the engine, the explosive gas given off by the battery could catch fire.**
- **Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the battery. Risk of acid burns!**
- **The screw plugs on the battery cells must be screwed in firmly.**
- **Keep sources of fire (flames, lit cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery. Risk of explosion!**
- **Never use the jump leads on batteries in which the electrolyte level is too low. Risk of explosion and acid burns.**

Note

- The vehicles must not touch each other, as electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle electrical system.
- The jump leads should be checked in a specialist vehicle battery shop. ■

Starting the engine

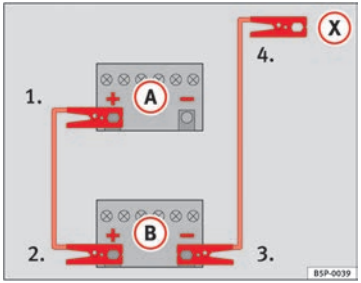

Fig. 136 Jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle: A – Discharged battery, B – Boosting battery

The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence:

Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead

– Connect one end (1) ⇒ Fig. 136 to the positive terminal of the flat battery (A).

– Connect the other end (2) to the positive terminal of the boosting battery (B). ▶

Connecting negative terminals with the engine block

– Connect one end (3) ⇒ Fig. 136 to the negative terminal of the boosting battery (B).

– Attach the other end (4) to a solid metal part firmly attached to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting the engine

– Start the engine of the vehicle and let it run at idling speed.

– Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

– If the engine fails to start, do not operate the start for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.

– Remove the jump leads from the engine in exactly the **opposite** sequence to that described above. ■

Jump-starting vehicles with the START-STOP system

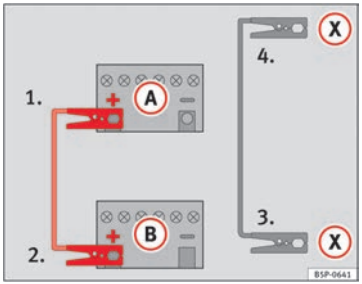

Fig. 137 Jump-starting vehicles with the START-STOP system

In vehicles fitted with the START-STOP system, the booster cable cannot be directly connected to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery but must be attached to the engine earthing point. ■

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

Vehicles with manual gearbox can be towed using a towbar or tow-rope. They can also be towed with either the front or rear wheels lifted off the road.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox can be towed using a towbar or towrope. They can also be towed with the front wheels lifted off the ▶

road. If the vehicle is towed with the rear wheels lifted off the road the automatic gearbox will be damaged!

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a **towbar**. A **towrope** should only be used if you do not have a towbar.

Follow the instructions below when towing a vehicle:

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

– Engage the clutch very gently when starting to move or on vehicles with automatic gearbox press the accelerator carefully.

– On vehicles with manual gearbox, the towrope must be taut before driving off.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h** (31 mph).

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle

– The ignition should be switched on so that the steering wheel lock is not engaged and the turn signals, horn and windscreen wipers and washers can be used.

– Put the gear lever in neutral or move the selector lever to position **N** (automatic gearbox).

The brake servo and power steering only work when the engine is running. Considerably more effort is required on the brake pedal and steering wheel when the engine is switched off.

Ensure the towrope remains taut at all times when towing.

CAUTION

- Do not tow-start the engine. Risk of engine damage! In vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel could reach the catalytic converter and catch fire in it. This could damage and destroy the catalytic converter. Use the battery from another vehicle for help in starting the engine ⇒ page 206, Starting the engine.
- If, due to a fault, there is no oil in the gearbox, the car may only be towed with the driven wheels lifted clear of the road and transported on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.
- If normal towing is not possible or if the vehicle is to be towed for further than 50 km (31 miles), the vehicle must be transported on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.
- The towrope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles during towing. It is advisable to use a towrope made of synthetic fibre or similar material only.
- Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and always take care to avoid jerking the towrope. When towing on a loose surface there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.
- Attach the towrope or towbar only to the **towline anchorages** or to the **removable towing bracket** ⇒ page 161, or ⇒ page 209.

Note

- We recommend you use the towrope or towbar available in the SEAT Original Accessories programme from authorised SEAT dealers.
- Towing a vehicle requires some experience. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow away another vehicle or to have their vehicle towed.
- Note the legal regulations concerning towing, particularly those regarding the signalling of the towed and towing vehicle.
- The towrope must not be twisted, as under certain circumstances this could unscrew the front towline anchorage.

Front towline anchorage

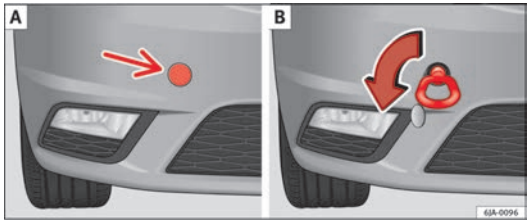

Fig. 138 Front bumper: towline anchorage cover/fitting

Fitting and detaching the cover

– Press on the left of the cover as indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 138 - A.

– Pull on the cover to remove it from the front bumper.

– To refit the cover after unscrewing the towline anchorage, fit the cover and press down on its right-hand side. The cover must be securely engaged.

Fitting and detaching the towline anchorage

– Screw in the towline anchorage anti-clockwise by hand as far as it will go ⇒ Fig. 138 - B.

To tighten the towline anchorage, we recommend using the box spanner, the towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be inserted through the anchorage.

– Unscrew the towline anchorage by turning it clockwise.

CAUTION

The towline anchorage must be screwed in as far as it will go. Otherwise there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing or tow-starting! ■

Rear towline anchorage

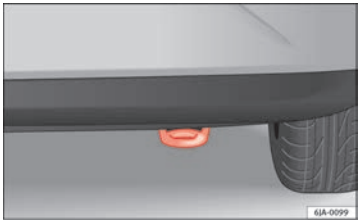

Fig. 139 Rear towline anchorage

The rear towline anchorage is under the rear bumper, on the right. ■

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

All the electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

- Switch off the ignition and the electrical component concerned before changing a fuse.
- Identify the fuse corresponding to the failed electrical component ⇒ page 211, Fuses in the dash panel, or ⇒ page 214, Changing fuses in the engine compartment.
- Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover, fit it onto the blown fuse and pull the fuse out.
- Replace the blown fuse (which will have a melted metal strip) with a new fuse of the **same** amp rating.

Fuse colour code

Colour	Maximum amp rating
light brown	5
dark brown	7,5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30

WARNING

Read and follow the warnings ⇒ page 173, Engine compartment before starting work in the engine compartment.

CAUTION

- Never “repair” a fuse or replace it by fitting a fuse with a higher amp rating. Risk of fire! This could also cause damage to other parts of the electrical system.
- If a newly replaced fuse blow again when the electrical component concerned is switched on, the electrical system must be checked by an Official Service as soon as possible.

Note

- It is advisable to always keep spare fuses in the vehicle. The spare fuse box is available in the range of original SEAT parts.
- One single electrical component could have more than one fuse.
- Several electrical components may be protected by the same fuse. ■

Fuses in the dash panel

Fig. 140 Bottom of the dash panel. Fuse cover

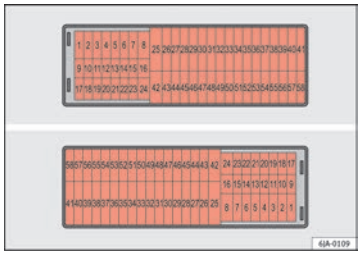

Fig. 141 Diagram of the fuse box to the left/right of the steering wheel

The fuses are located behind a cover below the steering wheel.

- Carefully tilt the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it ⇒ Fig. 140.
- After changing the fuse, replace the cover on the dash panel in the direction opposite that is indicated by the arrow so that the cover tabs fit into the slots on the dash panel. Subsequently, press down on the cover to close.

List of fuses in the dash panel

Number	Electrical equipment
1	S - ignition
2	START-STOP
3	Instrument panel, headlight range control, telephone, oil level sensor
4	ABS/ESC control unit
5	Petrol engine: cruise control
6	Reverse light (manual gearbox)
7	Switch, engine control unit, automatic gearbox
8	Brake switch, clutch switch, cooling fan
9	Heating control panel, air conditioning control unit, parking aid, electric window riser, radiator fan, windscreen wiper jets
10	DC-DC converter
11	Exterior mirror control
12	Towing bracket control unit
13	Automatic gearbox control unit, automatic gear selector
14	Headlight range control
15	Vacant
16	Power steering, speed sensor, engine control unit
17	Radio (START-STOP) daytime driving light
18	Heated mirrors
19	Ignition inlet
20	Engine control unit, fuel pump control unit, fuel pump
21	Reverse light (automatic gearbox), fog lights with CORNER function
22	Heating control panel, control unit of the climate control, telephone, general instrument panel, steering wheel angle sensor, multifunction steering wheel, automatic gearbox key lock
23	Interior lighting, glove compartment and luggage compartment lighting, side lights

Number	Electrical equipment
24	Central control unit for the vehicle
25	Vacant
26	Rear window wiper
27	Vacant
28	Petrol engine: AKF valve, additional heating
29	Injection, coolant pump
30	Fuel pump, ignition, cruise control
31	Lambda probe
32	High-pressure fuel pump, pressure valve
33	Engine control unit
34	Engine control unit, vacuum pump
35	Button backlighting, number plate lighting, parking lights, headlight washers
36	Main beams
37	Rear fog lights, DC/DC converter
38	Fog lights
39	Heater blower
40	Vacant
41	Heated front seats
42	Heated rear window
43	Horn
44	Windscreen wipers
45	Rear lid lock, central locking system
46	Alarm
47	Cigarette lighter, luggage compartment power socket
48	ABS
49	Turn signals, brake lights
50	DC-DC converter, radio
51	Electric window riser (driver + rear left-hand side)

Number	Electrical equipment
52	Electric window riser (front passenger + rear right-hand side)
53	Windscreen wash system
54	START-STOP general instrument panel, module below steering wheel, multifunction steering wheel
55	Automatic gearbox control unit
56	Headlight washer
57	Dipped beam headlight (left side)
58	Dipped beam headlight (right side)

Fuses in the engine compartment

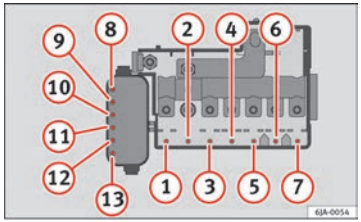

Fig. 142 Diagram of fuses in the engine compartment: version 1

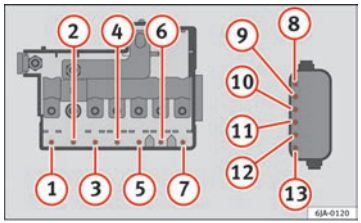

Fig. 143 Diagram of fuses in the engine compartment: version 2

List of fuses in the engine compartment

Number	Electrical equipment
1	Alternator
2	Vacant
3	Interior (version 1) ⇒ Fig. 142 Fuse block power (version 2) ⇒ Fig. 143
4	Additional electric heating (version 1) ⇒ Fig. 142 Interior (version 2) ⇒ Fig. 143
5	Interior
6	Radiator fan, glow plug system control unit
7	Electric-hydraulic power steering
8	ABS
9	Radiator fan
10	Automatic gearbox
11	ABS
12	Central control unit
13	Additional electric heating

Note

Fuses 1-7 must be changed in a specialised service. ■

Changing fuses in the engine compartment

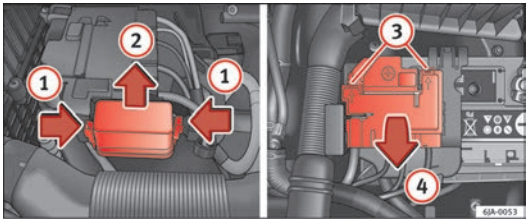

Fig. 144 Battery: fuse cover (version 1)

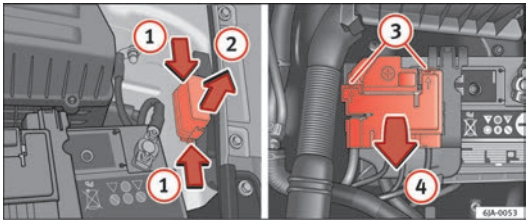

Fig. 145 Battery: fuse cover (version 2)

- Press the flexible tabs on the fuse box cover in the direction indicated by the arrows (1) ⇒ Fig. 144.
- Remove the cover by sliding it in the direction indicated by arrow (2).
- Use a flat-headed screwdriver to unlock the holes (3).
- Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (4). ■

Changing bulbs

Introduction

Changing bulbs requires a certain degree of practical skill. If in doubt, we recommend you have defective bulbs changed by a specialised service or, in case of an emergency, seek professional assistance.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before changing a bulb.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands. The fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, causing a reduction in bulb life and condensation on the mirror surface, thus reducing efficiency.
- A bulb must only be replaced by one of the same type. The type is indicated on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.
- There is a storage area for the bulb box in the spare wheel well or below the carpet in the luggage compartment.

The light source used for each function is listed below:

Double headlights

Dipped beam: H7 Long Life

Main beam: H7

Side lights: W5W Long Life

Turn signals: PY21W NA

Daytime driving lights: P21W Super Long Life ▶

WARNING

- **Take particular care when working on components in the engine compartment if the engine is warm. Risk of burns.**
- **Bulbs are highly sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.**
- **The high voltage element of gas discharge bulbs* (xenon light) must be handled correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of death.**
- **When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp parts in the headlight housing.**

CAUTION

- Remove the ignition key before working on the electric system. Otherwise, a short circuit could occur.
- Switch off the lights and the parking light before changing a bulb.

For the sake of the environment

Please ask your specialist retailer how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.

Note

- Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the front lights, the fog lights, the rear lights and the turn signals may be temporarily misted. This has no influence on the useful life of the lighting system. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted. However, the edges may remain misted.
- Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also in that of all other road users.
- Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands, use a cloth or paper towel instead. Otherwise, the fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, they will be deposited on the reflector and will impair its surface. ■

Double headlight bulbs

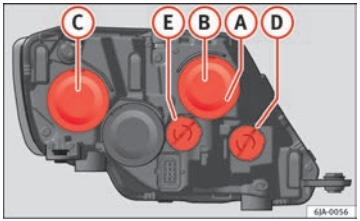

Fig. 146 Main headlight bulbs

Installation position of double headlight bulbs

- (A) side light
- (B) main beam headlight
- (C) dipped beam headlight
- (D) turn signal light
- (E) daytime driving light ■

Changing side light bulbs

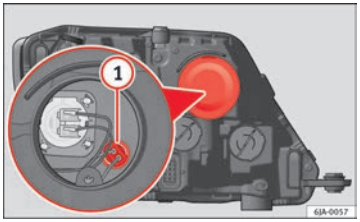

Fig. 147 Changing side light bulbs

- Raise the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cover ⇒ Fig. 147.
- Remove the bulb holder ⇒ Fig. 147 (1) by pulling it outwards.
- Remove the bulb by pulling it out and fit the new one.
- Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.
- Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during the operation.
- Check that the new bulb works properly. ■

Changing main beam headlight bulbs

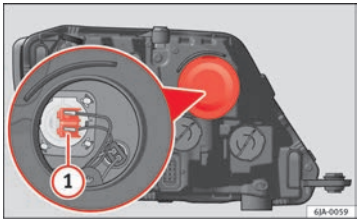

Fig. 148 Changing main beam headlight bulbs

- Raise the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cover.
- Remove the connector ⇒ Fig. 148 (1) by pulling it outwards.
- Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that it fits correctly into the recess on the reflector.
- Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.
- Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during the operation.
- Check that the new bulb works properly. ■

Changing dipped beam headlight bulbs

Fig. 149 Changing dipped beam headlight bulbs: wheel housing

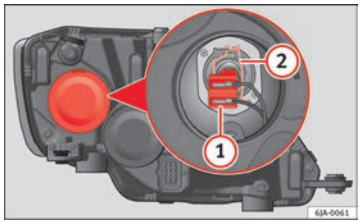

Fig. 150 Changing dipped beam headlight bulbs

– Turn the wheel for access to the wheel housing cover and remove the cover ⇒ Fig. 149.

– Remove the protective cover from the headlight ⇒ Fig. 150.

– Remove the connector ⇒ Fig. 150 (1) by pulling it outwards.

– Unclip the retainer spring ⇒ Fig. 150 (2) pressing clockwise and inwards.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that the lug on the base fits into the recess on the reflector.

– Fit the connector.

– Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during the operation.

– Replace the wheel housing cover.

– Check that the new bulb works properly. ■

Changing turn signal light bulbs

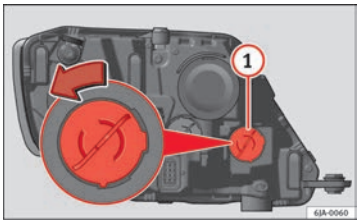

Fig. 151 Changing turn signal light bulbs

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the bulb holder ⇒ Fig. 151 (1) anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anti-clockwise at the same time. ▶

– Fit the replacement bulb in the bulb holder and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

– Check that the new bulb works properly. ■

Changing daytime driving light bulbs

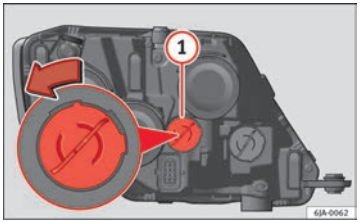

Fig. 152 Changing daytime driving light bulbs

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the bulb holder ⇒ Fig. 152 (1) anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anti-clockwise at the same time.

– Fit the replacement bulb in the bulb holder and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

– Check that the new bulb works properly. ■

Changing front fog light bulbs

Front fog light bulb

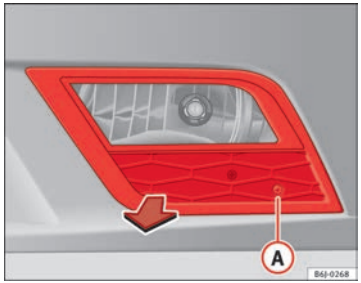

Fig. 153 Front fog light

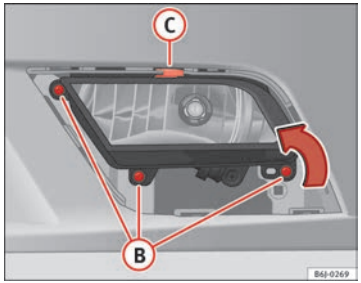

Fig. 154 Front fog light

– Remove the screw ⇒ Fig. 153 (A) from the fog light grill with a screwdriver.

– Subsequently, remove the clips located on the edge of the grill with gentle leverage.

– Remove the screws (3x) ⇒ Fig. 154 (B) to remove the front fog light.

– Remove the metal clip located at the top of the front fog light by pulling it towards you ⇒ Fig. 154 (C). ■

Removing the bulb holder

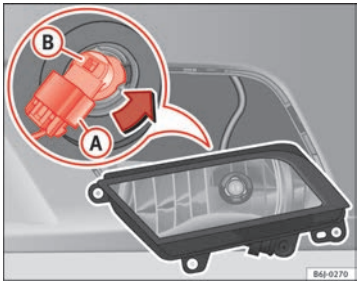

Fig. 155 Front fog light

– Remove the connector ⇒ Fig. 155 (A) from the bulb.

– Turn the bulb holder ⇒ Fig. 155 (A) anti-clockwise and pull it out of the fog light housing. ▶

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anti-clockwise at the same time.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

– Check that the bulb works properly. ■

Changing bulbs for rear lights (in side panel)

Removing tail light

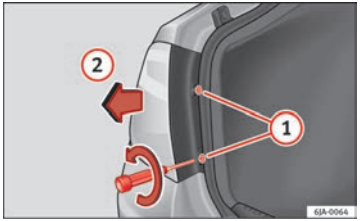

Fig. 156 Remove rear light unit from side panel

Check which of the bulbs is defective.

– Open the luggage compartment to access the rainduct area.

– Take the screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit and loosen (turning anti-clockwise) and remove the two retaining screws that secure the front of the light ⇒ Fig. 156 (1), taking care not to lose them.

– Pull the rear light unit backwards (⇒ Fig. 156 (2)) to remove the light from its housing. ■

Removing the bulb holder

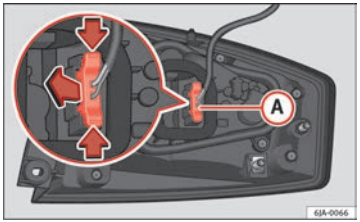

Fig. 157 Light connector at the rear of the rear light unit

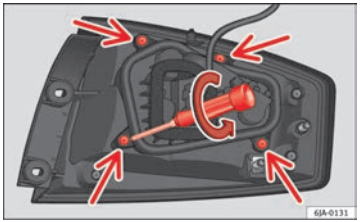

Fig. 158 Retaining screws on reverse side of rear light unit

– Disconnect the light connector (A) ⇒ Fig. 157 by moving its side levers (arrows) and pulling the connector outwards.

– Place the light on a level, horizontal surface on top of a soft cloth so as not to scratch the outer glass. ▶

– Unscrew the four retaining screws from the bulb holder anti-clockwise using a screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit ⇒ Fig. 158. Take care not to lose the bulb holder retaining screws. ■

Changing bulbs

All bulbs can be changed easily in the bulb holder.

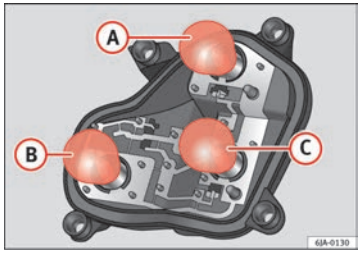

Fig. 159 Position of the bulbs in the bulb holder

The bulbs are secured with a bayonet fastener. The table below gives an overview of the bulbs.

– Lightly press the defective bulb into the bulb holder, then turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Fit the new bulb, pressing it into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.

– Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.

– Check that the new bulb works properly.

– Replace the bulb holder.

– Screw in the bulb holder using the four screws, turning them clockwise.

List of bulbs

Position: ⇒ Fig. 159	Bulb function
A	Turn signals: PY21W NA LL
B	Side lights-brake lights: P21/5W
C	Side lights: P21/5W

Note

Check the condition of the seal. If damaged, a replacement can be acquired from an Official Service. ■

Fitting rear light

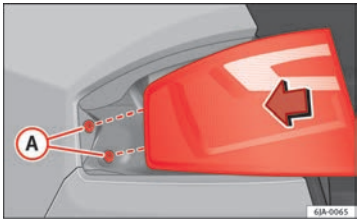

Fig. 160 Fitting tail light unit

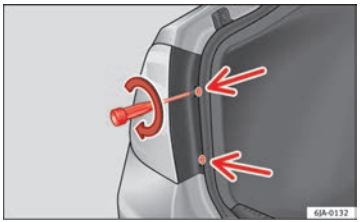

Fig. 161 Fitting tail light unit

– Make sure the connector is correctly in place.

– Press the rear light unit backwards (driving direction) by fitting the fastenings into the rubber mountings ⇒ Fig. 160 (A).

– Take the screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit and tighten (turning clockwise ⇒ Fig. 161) the two retaining screws that secure the front of the light. ■

Changing rear lights (in rear lid)

Removing the bulb holder

The rear lid must be open to change the bulbs.

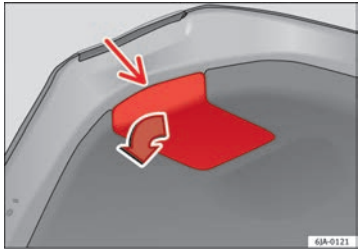

Fig. 162 Remove the cover from the rear lid

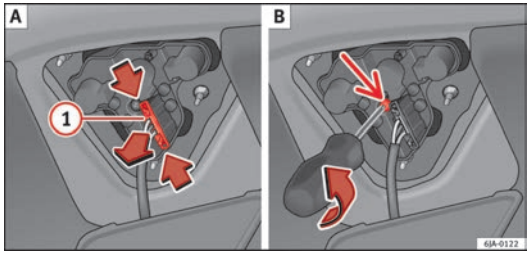

Fig. 163 Remove the bulb holder

You can access the bulb holder for the inner rear lights from the inside of the rear lid.

– Check which of the bulbs is defective.

– Open the cover to access the lights, turning it by hand in the direction indicated by the arrows.

– Access the lights by disconnecting the connector (1) ⇒ Fig. 163 A and unscrewing the bulb holder ⇒ Fig. 163 B. Take care not to lose the bulb holder retaining screw.

– Change the bulbs ⇒ page 223. ■

Changing bulbs

All bulbs can be changed easily in the bulb holder.

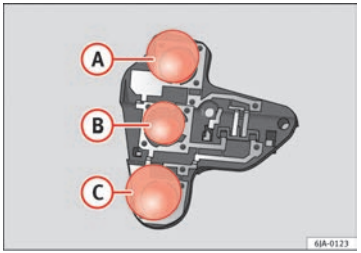

Fig. 164 Position of the bulbs in the bulb holder

The bulbs are secured with a bayonet fastener. The table below gives an overview of the bulbs ⇒ table on page 224. ▶

– Lightly press the defective bulb into the bulb holder, then turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Fit the new bulb, pressing it into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.

– Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.

– Check that the new bulb works properly.

– Re-install the bulb holder ⇒ page 224.

– Screw in the bulb holder.

List of bulbs

Pos. ⇒ Fig. 164	Bulb function	
A	Reverse light	P21W
B	Side lights	R5W LL
C	Fog lights	P21W

Note

One of the two sides might not be fitted with a fog light, depending on the country and type of driving. In this case, the hole for the light is covered.

Fitting the bulb holder

The bulb holder is easy to fit.

– Position the bulb holder on the rear light unit and align it so that it is securely seated.

– Screw in the bulb holder using the corresponding screw.

– Make sure the connector is correctly in place.

– Close the inner trim cover.

Note

Check the condition of the seal. If damaged, a replacement can be acquired from an Official Service.

Changing bulb for the number plate light

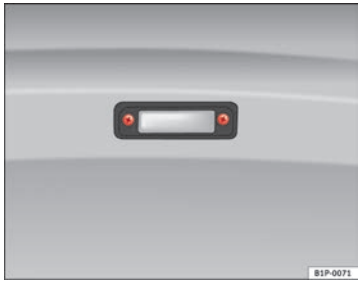

Fig. 165 Removing number plate light

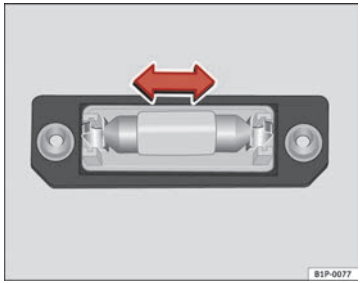

Fig. 166 Changing bulb

– Unscrew the screws to remove the bulb ⇒ Fig. 165.

– Remove the bulb, moving it in the direction of the arrow and outwards ⇒ Fig. 166.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence. ■

Technical specifications

Description of the data

Important information

Important

The information in the vehicle documentation always has precedence.

All technical specifications provided in this documentation are valid for the standard model in Spain. The vehicle data card included in the Maintenance Programme or the vehicle registration documentation shows which engine is installed in the vehicle.

The figures may be different depending whether additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Abbreviations used in the Technical Specifications section

Abbreviation	Meaning
kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
PS	Pferdestärke (horsepower), formerly used to denote engine power.
rpm	Revolutions per minute - engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
litres per 100 km (miles)	Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km (miles).
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per km (mile) travelled.
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
CN	Cetane number, indication of the diesel combustion power.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle identification data on the data sticker

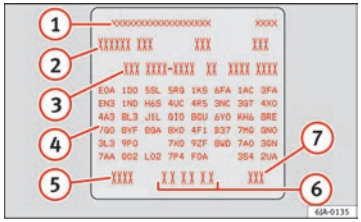

Fig. 167 Data sticker

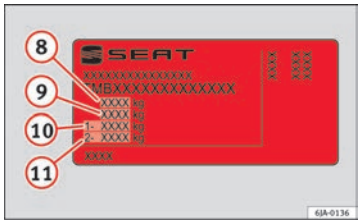

Fig. 168 Type plate

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ Fig. 167 is located on the luggage compartment floor and is also attached to the Service Plan.

The following information is provided on the vehicle data sticker:

1. Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2. Vehicle model
3. Identifying letters of the gearbox/number of the original paint finish/Interior equipment number/engine power/engine identifying letter
4. Partial description of the vehicle
5. Weight in running order
6. Fuel consumption (in litres per/100 km (miles)) – urban/on the motorway/combined
7. Combined CO_2 emissions (g/km (miles))

Type plate

The type plate ⇒ Fig. 168 is located at the bottom of the front driver side door pillar between the front and rear door.

The type plate indicates the following weights:

8. Total permitted weight of the vehicle when loaded
9. Maximum authorised weight of the vehicle with a trailer, when the vehicle operates as a tractor
10. Maximum permitted load of the front axle
11. Maximum permitted load of the rear axle

Weight in running order

The weight in running order only has one approximate value. This value corresponds to the minimum operative weight of the vehicle without additional equipment that increases its weight, i.e. air conditioning, spare wheel, towing bracket.

The weight in running order also includes 75 kg of the weight of the driver and the service liquids, in addition to a fuel tank at 90 % capacity.

From the difference between the total permitted weight in running order the approximate carrying capacity can be calculated ⇒ ⚠.

The carrying capacity must include:

- occupants
- all pieces of equipment and other weights
- roof loads incl. roof rack ▶

- equipment that is not included in the running order
- when using the towing bracket, the drawbar load (max. 50 kg)

Calculating fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to the ECE regulations and the EU specifications

Calculation of fuel consumption for urban driving starts when cold-starting the engine. Then, normal city driving is simulated.

In extra-urban driving fuel consumption calculation, the vehicle brakes and accelerated in all gears, as in daily use of the vehicle. The driving speed moves between a range of 0 and 120 km/h (0 and 75 mph).

The consumption value in combined driving is composed of 37 % of the value of urban driving and 63 % of the value of extra-urban driving.

WARNING

The maximum permitted weight values must not be exceeded – Risk of an accident and damage to the vehicle!

Note

- If you wish to calculate the exact weight of your vehicle please contact a SEAT dealer.
- Depending on the volume of equipment, the driving style, road conditions, weather conditions and the condition of the vehicle, the consumption values can differ from the theoretical values reproduced here. ■

Information on fuel consumption

Fuel consumption

The consumption and emission details shown on the vehicle data sticker differ from one vehicle to another.

The vehicle's fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions can be consulted on the vehicle data sticker in the spare wheel well, inside the luggage compartment and on the rear cover of the Maintenance Programme.

The fuel consumption and CO_2 emission values refer to the weight category assigned to your vehicle according to the engine and gearbox combination, as well as the specific equipment fitted, and is only used to compare between the different models.

The fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions do not depend only on the performance of the vehicle, they can also differ from the established values depending on other factors such as driving style, road conditions, traffic conditions, environmental conditions, load and number of passengers.

Calculation of fuel consumption

The consumption values have been calculated based on measurements performed or supervised by certified CE laboratories according to the latest version of directives 715/2007/EC and 80/1268/CEE (for more information consult the European Union Publications Office at EUR-Lex: © European Union, http://eur-lex.europa.eu/en/index.htm) and are valid for the kerb weight indicated for the vehicle.

Note

In practice, and considering all the factors mentioned here, consumption values can differ from those calculated in the current European regulations. ■

Weights

Kerb weight refers to the basic model with a fuel tank filled to 90% capacity and without optional extras. The figure quoted includes 75 kg to allow for the weight of the driver.

For special versions and optional equipment fittings or for the addition of accessories, the weight of the vehicle will increase ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle's handling and lead to an accident. Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit road conditions and requirements.**
- **Never exceed the gross axle weight rating or the gross vehicle weight rating. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Towing a trailer

Trailer weights

Trailer weight

The trailer weights and drawbar loads approved are selected in intensive trials according to precisely defined criteria. The approved trailer weights are valid for vehicles in the *EU* for maximum speeds of 80 km/h (50 mph) (in certain circumstances up to 100 km/h, 62 mph). The figures may be different in other countries. All data in the official vehicle documentation takes precedence over these data at all times ⇒ ⚠.

Drawbar load

The *maximum* permitted drawbar load on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed **75 kg**.

In the interest of road safety, we recommend that you always tow approaching the maximum drawbar load. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

If the maximum permissible drawbar load cannot be met (e.g. with small, empty and light-weight single axle trailers or tandem axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1 metre), a minimum of 4% of the actual trailer weight is legally required for the drawbar load.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons, do not exceed the 80 km/h (50 mph) limit. This is also valid in countries where higher speeds are permitted.**
- **Never exceed the maximum trailer weights or the drawbar load. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Wheels

Tyre pressure, snow chains, wheel bolts

Tyre pressures

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the inside of the fuel tank flap. The tyre pressure values given there are for *cold* tyres. Do not reduce the slightly raised pressures of warm tyres ⇒ ⚠.

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the *front wheels*.

Consult the section “wheels” of this manual.

Wheel bolts

After the wheels have been changed, the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ⇒ ⚠.
The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is **120** Nm.

WARNING

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Checking the tyre pressure is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents, particularly at high speeds.**
- **If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.**

Note

We recommend that you ask your Technical Service for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size. ■

Technical Data

Checking fluid levels

From time to time, the levels of the different fluids in the vehicle must be checked. Never fill with incorrect fluids, otherwise serious damage to the engine may be caused.

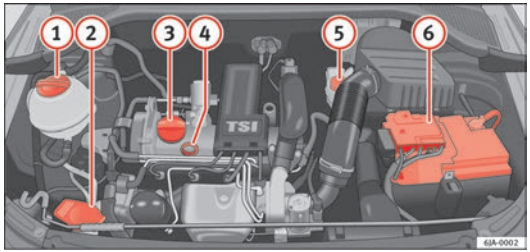

Fig. 169 Diagram for the location of the various elements

1 Coolant expansion tank 179
2 Windscreen washer fluid container 182
3 Engine oil filler cap 178
4 Engine oil level dipstick 177
5 Brake fluid reservoir 181
6 Battery 182

The checking and replenishment of the service fluids are carried out on the components mentioned above. These operations are described in the ⇒ page 173.

Overview

You will find further explanations, instructions and restrictions on the technical specifications as of ⇒ page 226.

Note

Availability in the engine compartment is very similar to all the petrol and diesel engines.

Petrol engine 1.2 55 kW (75 PS)

Engine specifications

Power output in kW (PS)	rpm	55 (75)/ 5400
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	112/ 3750
No. of cylinders/capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1198
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber = Anti-detonation rating of the petrol.

b) Slight power loss.

Performance

Maximum speed	in km/h (mph)	175 (5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	9,3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	13,9

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1600
Weight in running order (with driver)	in kg	1140
Gross front axle weight	in kg	658
Gross rear axle weight	in kg	482
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weight

Trailer without brakes	570
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	950
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	750

Petrol engine 1.2 TSI 63 kW (85 PS)

Engine specifications

Power output in kW (PS)	rpm	63 (85)/ 4800
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	160/ 1500-3500
No. of cylinders/capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1197
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber = Anti-detonation rating of the petrol.

b) Slight power loss.

Performance

Maximum speed	in km/h (mph)	183
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	7,6
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	11,8

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1621
Weight in running order (with driver)	in kg	1161
Gross front axle weight	in kg	680
Gross rear axle weight	in kg	481
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weight

Trailer without brakes	580
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1100
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	900

Petrol engine 1.2 77 kW (105 PS) with/without Start-Stop

Engine specifications

Power output in kW (PS)	rpm	77 (105)/ 5000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	175/ 1500-4100
No. of cylinders/capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1197
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber = Anti-detonation rating of the petrol.

b) Slight power loss.

Performance

Maximum speed	in km/h (mph)	195
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	7,1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	10,4

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1635
Weight in running order (with driver)	in kg	1175
Gross front axle weight	in kg	695
Gross rear axle weight	in kg	480
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weight

Trailer without brakes	580
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1200
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1100

Petrol engine 1.4 90 kW (122 PS) Automatic

Engine specifications

Power output in kW (PS)	rpm	90 (122)/ 5000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	200/ 1500-4000
No. of cylinders/capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1197
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber = Anti-detonation rating of the petrol.

b) Slight power loss.

Performance

Maximum speed	in km/h (mph)	206
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	6,5
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	9,5

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1696
Weight in running order (with driver)	in kg	1236
Gross front axle weight	in kg	760
Gross rear axle weight	in kg	476
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weight

Trailer without brakes	610
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1200
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1200

Diesel engine 1.6 CR 77 kW (105 PS) with/without Start-Stop

Engine specifications

Power output in kW (PS)	rpm	77 (105)/ 4400
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	250/ 1500-2500
No. of cylinders/capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1598
Fuel		Min. 51 CN[a)]

a) **C**etane **N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the diesel combustion power.

Performance

Maximum speed	in km/h (mph)	190
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	7,2
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (0-62 mph)	in sec.	10,6

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1714
Weight in running order (with driver)	in kg	1254
Gross front axle weight	in kg	773
Gross rear axle weight	in kg	481
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weight

Trailer without brakes	620
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1200
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1200

Dimensions and capacities

Dimensions		
Length, width	4482 mm/1715 mm	
Height at kerb weight	1466 mm	
Front and rear projection	876 mm/1004 mm	
Wheelbase	2602 mm	
Turning circle	a)	
Track width[b)]	**Front**	**Rear**
	1463 mm	1500 mm
Capacities		
Fuel tank	55 litres	
Windscreen washer fluid container with headlight washer	a)	
Tyre pressure		
Summer-grade tyres: The correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap. **Winter tyres:** The pressure of these tyres is the same as the summer tyre pressure plus 0.2 bar.		

a) Data not available as this edition goes to print.

b) This data will change depending on the type of wheel rim.

Index

A

ABS 142
control lamp 70
Accessories 195
Adjusting the seat belt height 29
Adjustment
seats 108
steering wheel 137
Aerial 165
see radio reception 167
Airbag 31
Airbag covers 37
Airbag system 31
control lamp 33
Curtain airbags 41
Front airbags 35
Side airbags 38
air conditioning
air conditioning 126
Air conditioning
air conditioning 129, 131
Climatronic 132
Air recirculation
manual air conditioning 131
Alarm 88
Anti-lock system 142
Anti-theft alarm system 88
Armrest 108
rear 111
Ashtrays 118
Aspects to take into account before starting the vehicle 8
ASR 142
Assistance systems 69
control lamp 69
Assistance system
ABS 142
ASR 142
START-STOP 151
Assistance systems
ABS 70
cruise control 149
EDL 142
ESC 69, 141
parking aid 148
Audible warning 21
Auto-check system 64
Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment 186
Automatic gearbox 143
back-up programme 147
Driving programmes 146
instructions for use 143
kick-down 146
manual release of the selector lever 147
parking 144
Selector lever lock 146
selector lever positions 144
starting 144
stopping 144
Tiptronic 145
AUX-IN 80

B

Back-up
automatic gearbox 147
Battery
automatic disconnection of electrical equipment 186
changing 186
charging 185
checking acid level 184
safety instructions 182
winter service 185
Before starting the vehicle 8
Bonnet
closing 175
opening 175
Brake assist 141
Brake fluid
checking 181
brakes
brake fluid 181

Brakes
handbrake 140
running in 154
warning lamps 66
Brake servo 140
Brake servo 140
bulbs – changing 214
Button on driver door
opening and closing electric windows 92

C

Car computer
see multi-function display 59
Care of the vehicle 164
Care of vehicle
automatic car wash 165
cleaning chrome 166
cleaning wheels 168
door lock cylinder 167
headlights 167
high-pressure cleaners 166
leatherette 169
natural leather 169
plastic parts 167
polishing of paintwork 166
rubber seals 167
seat belts 170
upholstery 169
washing 165
washing by hand 165
waxing 166
carrier 116
Catalytic converter 154
Central lock button 85
Central locking system 83
locking 85
unlocking 84
Changing
a wheel 198
battery 186
blades 104
bulbs 214
engine oil 178
fuses 210
wiper blades 105
Changing bulbs
double headlight bulbs 215
front fog light bulbs 219
Changing gear
economical driving 155
recommended gear 58
Charging the battery 185
Checking
battery acid level 184
brake fluid 181
coolant 179
engine oil 177
oil level 177
windscreen washer 182
Checking fluid levels
engine compartment 231
Childproof locks 82
Child safety 45
Child seat
Categorisation in groups 47
Group 1 48
Group 2 48
Group 3 48
Groups 0 and 0+ 47
Safety notes 45
Securing 50
Child seats 47
ISOFIX system 51
on the front passenger seat 32
Top Tether system 51
Cigarette lighter 118
Cleaning 164
chrome 166
headlights 167
leatherette 169
natural leather 169
plastic parts 167
upholstery 169
wheels 168
Cleaning chrome
see care of vehicle 166
Climatronic
air recirculation 134
Clock 58
Coat hooks 124
Compartments 120
Computer
see multi-function display 59
control lamp 33
Control lamps 65

Controls and displays
summary 53
coolant
temperature display 56
Coolant 179
checking 179
topping up 180
warning lamp 68
Correct adjustment of front seat head restraints 14
Correct adjustment of rear seat head restraints
In-use and non-use positions 15
Correct sitting position
front passenger 12
Incorrect sitting position 16
passenger 13
Cruise control 149
Curtain airbags 41
Description 41
Operation 42
Safety notes 42

D

Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 32
Data sticker 227
DAY LIGHT
see daytime driving lights 95
Daytime driving lights 95
Defrosting rear window 101
Diesel
fuel 173
see fuel 173
Diesel fuel
winter driving 173
Digital clock 58
Dipstick 177
Disabling the airbag 43
Display
service interval 57
Disposal
Airbags 33
Seat belt tensioners 30
Door
childproof locks 82
manual locking 86
Drink holder
Drink holder 117
rear 117
Driver
see Correct sitting position 11, 12, 13
Driving
abroad 158
driving through water 159
Emission values 227
fuel consumption 227
Driving safety 8
Driving the vehicle with a trailer 161

E

Ecological driving 154
Economical and ecological driving 154
EDL 142
Electronic differential lock 142
Electronic immobiliser 138
Emergency
jump-starting 205
towing the vehicle 207
tyre repairs 202
Emission values 227
Engine
running in 153
starting the engine 138
switching off the engine 139
Engine compartment 231
battery 182
brake fluid 181
coolant 179
Engine coolant 179
Engine oil 176
changing 178
oil properties 177
specifications 176
topping up 178
warning lamp 67
Environment 154
Environmental compatibility 158
ESC 141
control lamp 69
extending the rear lid locking time
see rear lid 90

F

Fastening rings 18
Fire extinguisher 197
First-aid kit 197
Floor mats 17, 148
Front airbags 35
  Description 35
  Operation 36
  Safety notes 37
Front fog light bulb 219
Front seats 107
Fuel 171
  fuel gauge 56
  refuelling 171
  see fuel 171
  unleaded petrol 172
Fuel consumption 154
Fuses
  changing 210
  position 210

G

Gauge
  coolant temperature 56
  fuel level 56
General instrument panel 55

H

Handbrake 140
Hazard
  warning lights 98
HBA 141
Headlights
  driving abroad 159
  Headlight washer system 104
Head restraints 109
Heated rear window 101
Heating 127
  air recirculation 128
  defrosting windows 128
  exterior mirrors 106
  rear window 101
  seats 109
HHC 141
Hill-hold control 141
Horn 53

I

Identification plate 227
Ignition 138
Ignition lock 138
Immobiliser 138
Informative display
  see MAXI DOT 62
Instrument panel
  see general instrument panel 55
Interior
  ashtray 118
  cigarette lighter 118
  lighting 99
  Power socket 119
  Storage compartment 120
Interval wipe 104
ISOFIX system 51

J

Jack 198
  securing 201
Jump-starting 205

K

Keys 81

L

Lever
  main beam headlights 97
  turn signals 97
Lights
  changing bulbs 214
  control lamps 65
  Daytime driving lights 95
  dipped beam 94
  front fog lights 95
  Front fog lights with CORNER function 98
  hazard warning lights 98
  headlight flasher 97
  Interior 99
  Main beam headlights 97
  parking lights 98
  parking lights on both sides 98

range control of main lights 96
rear fog light 96
side lights 94
switching lights on and off 94
turn signals 97
Load 227
Load compartment in the luggage compartment
see Loading the luggage compartment . . . 17
Loading the luggage compartment 17
Locking
central locking system 85
manual locking 86
remote control 87
Locking and unlocking from inside 85
Luggage compartment
Category N1 vehicles 113
hook 114
light 113
manual release 91
Manual release of the rear lid 91
retaining elements 113
retaining nets 114
see rear lid 90
shelf 115
see also Loading the luggage compartment 17

M

Maintenance
Airbags 33
Make-up
mirror 101
Manual
door locking 86
release of the rear lid 91
Release of the selector lever 147
Manual gearbox
gear lever 142
MAXI DOT 62
main menu 63
Settings 63
MDI 80
Mirror
exterior mirrors 106
Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment 106
Modifications 195
Multi-function display
function 59
Multifunction display
Memory 59
operation 60
Multimedia 80

N

Number of seats 20

O

Oil 176
see engine oil 177
Oil level
checking 177
Oil properties 177
On board computer
see multi-function display 59
Opening and closing electric windows
button on driver door 92
control on the driver door 92
control on the rear door 92
Outside temperature 60
Overview 53
Overview of the engine compartment 231

P

Paint
see paint damage 166
Paint damage 166
Parking
parking aid 148
Particulate filter 71
Passenger
see Correct sitting position 11, 12, 13
Pedals 17
Petrol
see fuel 172
Physical principles of a frontal collision 22
Polishing paintwork
see care of vehicle 166
Power steering 137
Preheating – warning lamp 70
Preventing damage to the vehicle 159

R

Radiator fan 180
Radio reception
aerial 167
Raising the vehicle 201
Rear lid 90
automatic locking 90
rear vision mirror
exterior mirrors 106
Rear vision mirror
Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment 106
Recommended gear display 58
Refuelling 171
fuel 171
Remote control 86
synchronisation 88
Remote control key
replacing the battery 81
Repairs
Airbags 33
Rev counter 55
Rims 187
Roof carrier
attachment points 116
roof load 117
Running in
brake pads 154
engine 153
the first 1500 km (900 miles) 153
the tyres 154

S

Safe driving 7
Safe Lock 83
Safety 8
child safety 45
child seat 45
Head restraints 109
Safety equipment 7
Safety first 7
Safety notes
Airbags 33
Curtain airbags 42
Front airbags 37
Seat belt tensioners 30
Side airbags 40
Using child seats 45
Using seat belts 24
Saving electrical energy 154
Seat adjuster 10
Seat belt
warning lamp 67
Seat belt control lamp 20
Seat belt position
Pregnant women 28
Seat belts 27
Seat belt protection 24
Seat belt release 28
Seat belts 20
Adjustment 26
cleaning 170
control lamp 20
Incorrectly fastened 29
Not worn 23
Safety notes 24
Seat belt tensioner
control lamp 33
Seat belt tensioners 30
Seats
adjustment 108
angle 110
head restraints 109
heating 109
Selector lever
see selector lever positions 144
Selector lever positions 144
Service display 57
Setting
clock 58
Settings
exterior mirrors 106
Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment 106
light range control 96
Side airbags 38
Description 38
Operation 39
Safety notes 40
Sitting position
driver 11
Sitting position for vehicle occupants 10
Snow chains 193, 229
Spare
changing a wheel 198

Spare parts 195
Spare wheel 190
Speedometer 56
see speedometer 56
START-STOP
description 151
jump-starting 207
Starting the engine 138
Starting with jump leads
jump-starting 205
Steering wheel 137
Steering wheel controls 74
Storage
luggage compartment 112
Storage compartment 120
Summary
control lamps 65
controls and displays 53
Sun visors 101
see sun visors 101
Switching off the engine 139

T

Technical data 231
Technical Data 226
Temperature selection
heating 127
The danger of not using the seat belt 23
Tightening torque of wheel bolts 230
Tiptronic 143
see automatic gearbox 145
Tool kit 198
Topping up
coolant 180
engine oil 178
windscreen washer 182
Top Tether system 51
Tow-away protection system 89
Towing 207
Towing a trailer 229
Towline anchorage 209
rear 209
Traction control 142
Trailer 161
Towing a trailer 162
Trailer weights 229
Transport
roof carrier 116
Transporting children 45
Trip 57
Trip counter 57
Tyre pressures 229
Tyre repair kit 202
Tyre repairs 202
Tyres
see Wheels and tyres 189

U

Underbody sealant 168
Unlocking
central locking system 84
remote control 87
USB 80

V

Vehicle interior monitoring 89
Vehicle status
see Auto-check system 64
Vehicle tool kit 198
Ventilation slits 18

W

Warning symbols
see warning lamps 65
Warning triangle 197
Washing 164
automatic car wash 165
by hand 165
washing with high-pressure cleaners 166
Waxing
see care of vehicle 166
Wearing suitable shoes 17
Weights 227
Wheel bolts 230
anti-theft wheel bolts 202
caps 191
loosening and tightening 200
Wheels 229
Wheels and tyres
changing a wheel 198
general notes 187
handling wheels and tyres 189

replacing tyres 189
snow chains 193
spare wheel 190
tyre useful life 188
wheel bolts 193
wheel trim 191
winter tyres 193
Why assume the correct sitting position? 31
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 14
Why wear seat belts? 20, 22, 31
Windows
de-icing 167
see opening and closing electric windows . 92
Windscreen
see radio reception 167
Windscreen washer
checking 182
headlight washer system 104
topping up 182
winter 182
Windscreen washer fluid
warning lamp 73
Windscreen washer system 182
Windscreen wiper
jets 103
windscreen washer 182
Windscreen wipers
changing the rear window wiper blade . . . 105
changing windscreen wiper blades 104
control 103
Winter driving
diesel fuel 173
Winter service
battery 185
Cleaning windows 167
snow chains 193
Winter tyres
see Wheels and tyres 193

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the “Copyright” Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.05.12

Inglés 6JA012003B (05.12)